INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS,

INC.

Petitioner,

- VS -

No. IPR2013-00517 U.S. PATENT 7,566,537

ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE LTD

Patent Owner.

VIDEO DEPOSITION OF FLOYD ROMESBERG, Ph.D.

July 8, 2014

Reported by: LYNN PENFIELD, CSR No. 8589, RPR, CRR

Columbia Exhibit 2035 Illumina, Inc. v. The Trustees of Columbia University in the City of New York IPR2018-00322

| 1 | INDEX | |
|----|--|----------|
| 2 | | |
| 3 | THE WITNESS: EXA | MINATION |
| 4 | FLOYD ROMESBERG, Ph.D. | |
| 5 | BY MR. SEGAL | 9 |
| 6 | BI MS. SWAROOP | 170 |
| 7 | QUESTIONS NOT ANSWERED | |
| 8 | PAG | E LINE |
| 9 | Did you ask your attorneys for other 15 | 9 2 |
| 10 | data with regard to the cleavage of | |
| 11 | allyl protecting groups? | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | EXHIBITS | |
| 14 | DEPOSITION EXHIBIT: | PAGE |
| 15 | Exhibit 1018 A 2-page copy of a document | 111 |
| 16 | entitled, "A Mild and Rapid | |
| 17 | Regeneration of Alcohols from | L |
| 18 | their Allylic Ethers by | |
| 19 | Chlorotrimethylsilane/Sodium | |
| 20 | Iodide" by Ahmed Kamal and | |
| 21 | others | |
| 22 | | |
| 23 | | |
| 24 | | |
| 25 | | |

| 1 | Exhibit 1019 | A 14-page copy of a document | 112 |
|----|--------------|----------------------------------|-----|
| 2 | | entitled, "Approach to the Total | |
| 3 | | Synthesis of Chlorothricolide: | |
| 4 | | Synthesis of (+-)-19,20-Dihydro- | |
| 5 | | 24-O-methylchlorothricolide, | |
| 6 | | Methyl Ester, Ethyl Carbonate" | |
| 7 | | by Robert E. Ireland and | |
| 8 | | Michael D. Varney | |
| 9 | Exhibit 1020 | A 2-page copy of a document | 170 |
| 10 | | entitled, "Abstracts, | |
| 11 | | Biophysical Society, Sixth | |
| 12 | | Annual Meeting" | |
| 13 | | | |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |
| 16 | | | |
| 17 | | | |
| 18 | | | |
| 19 | | | |
| 20 | | | |
| 21 | | | |
| 22 | | | |
| 23 | | | |
| 24 | | | |
| 25 | | | |

| 1 | EXHIBITS REFERRED TO: | | PAGE |
|----|-----------------------|--------|------|
| 2 | 1001 | | 21 |
| 3 | 1002 | | 51 |
| 4 | 1004 | | 112 |
| 5 | 1008 | | 99 |
| 6 | 1106 | | 119 |
| 7 | 2011 | | 13 |
| 8 | 2013 | | 138 |
| 9 | 2014 | | 140 |
| 10 | 2015 | | 141 |
| 11 | 2016 | | 143 |
| 12 | 2018 | | 147 |
| 13 | 2019 | | 81 |
| 14 | 2021 | | 150 |
| 15 | | | |
| 16 | CONFIDENTIAL SECTION | BEGINS | ENDS |
| 17 | No. 1 | 164 | 168 |
| 18 | | | |
| 19 | | | |
| 20 | | | |
| 21 | | | |
| 22 | | | |
| 23 | | | |
| 24 | | | |
| 25 | | | |

| 1 | APPEARANCES |
|----|---|
| 2 | |
| 3 | FOR THE PETITIONER: |
| 4 | BALLARD SPAHR LLP |
| 5 | BY: MARC S. SEGAL, ESQ. |
| 6 | 1735 Market Street, 51st Floor |
| 7 | Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103-7599 |
| 8 | 215-665-8500 |
| 9 | segalm@ballardspahr.com |
| 10 | AND |
| 11 | BALLARD SPAHR, LLP |
| 12 | BY: SCOTT D. MARTY, Ph.D., ESQ. |
| 13 | 999 Peachtree Street, Suite 1000 |
| 14 | Atlanta, Georgia 30309-3915 |
| 15 | 678-420-9300 |
| 16 | martys@ballardspahr.com |
| 17 | FOR THE PATENT OWNER ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE LTD.: |
| 18 | KNOBBE MARTENS OLSON & BEAR LLP |
| 19 | BY: SHEILA SWAROOP, ESQ. |
| 20 | 2040 Main Street, 14th Floor |
| 21 | Irvine, California 92614 |
| 22 | 949-760-0404; FAX 949-760-9502 |
| 23 | sheila.swaroop@kmob.com |
| 24 | AND |
| 25 | /// |

| 1 | KNOBBE MARTENS OLSON & BEAR LLP |
|----|---|
| 2 | BY: NATHANAEL R. LUMAN, Ph.D., J.D., ESQ. |
| 3 | KERRY S. TAYLOR, Ph.D., ESQ. |
| 4 | 12790 El Camino Real, Suite 100 |
| 5 | San Diego, California 92130 |
| 6 | 858-707-4000; FAX 858-707-4001 |
| 7 | Nate.Luman@knobbe.com |
| 8 | kerry.taylor@knobbe.com |
| 9 | AND |
| 10 | ILLUMINA, INC. |
| 11 | BY: MARCUS BURCH, ESQ. |
| 12 | 5200 Illumina Way |
| 13 | San Diego, California 92122 |
| 14 | 224-643-7473 |
| 15 | mburch@illumina.com |
| 16 | VIDEO RECORDING PROVIDED BY: |
| 17 | JORDAN MEDIA, INC. |
| 18 | BY: JON IMEL |
| 19 | 1228 Madison Avenue |
| 20 | San Diego, California 92116 |
| 21 | 619-299-4050 |
| 22 | |
| 23 | |
| 24 | |
| 25 | |

| 1 | VIDEO DEPOSITION OF FLOYD ROMESBERG, PH.D. |
|----|---|
| 2 | taken by Petitioner at 12790 El Camino Real, Suite 100, |
| 3 | San Diego, California 92130, commencing on Tuesday, |
| 4 | July 8, 2014, at 9:02 a.m. before Lynn Penfield, |
| 5 | Certified Shorthand Reporter, Registered Professional |
| 6 | Reporter, Certified Realtime Reporter. |
| 7 | |
| 8 | |
| 9 | |
| 10 | |
| 11 | |
| 12 | |
| 13 | |
| 14 | |
| 15 | |
| 16 | |
| 17 | |
| 18 | |
| 19 | |
| 20 | |
| 21 | |
| 22 | |
| 23 | |
| 24 | |
| 25 | |

| 12:35:37 | 1 | San Diego, California July 8, 2014 9:18 a.m. |
|----------|----|---|
| 08:42:13 | 2 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Good morning. We are on |
| 09:18:12 | 3 | the record. This is the digital video deposition of |
| 09:18:15 | 4 | Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D., testifying in the matter of |
| 09:18:20 | 5 | Intelligent Bio-Systems, Inc., versus Illumina |
| 09:18:24 | 6 | Cambridge, case number IPR2013-00517. |
| 09:18:31 | 7 | Today we are located at 12790 El Camino Real, |
| 09:18:35 | 8 | San Diego, California. Today's date is July 8th, 2014. |
| 09:18:39 | 9 | The time on the video monitor is 9:18 a.m. |
| 09:18:43 | 10 | My name is Jon Imel, video specialist with |
| 09:18:46 | 11 | Jordan Media, Inc., located at 1228 Madison Avenue, |
| 09:18:51 | 12 | San Diego, California. The certified shorthand reporter |
| 09:18:55 | 13 | today is Lynn Penfield in association with Kramm Court |
| 09:19:00 | 14 | Reporting, located in San Diego, California. |
| 09:19:02 | 15 | Will counsel please introduce yourselves for |
| 09:19:04 | 16 | the record. |
| 09:19:05 | 17 | MR. SEGAL: Mark Segal, Ballard Spahr, for |
| 09:19:09 | 18 | Intelligent Bio-Systems; and with me is Scott Marty, |
| 09:19:14 | 19 | also from Ballard Spahr for Intelligent Bio-Systems. |
| 09:19:18 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Sheila Swaroop, Knobbe Martens |
| 09:19:20 | 21 | Olson & Bear, for Illumina. Also with me from Knobbe |
| 09:19:24 | 22 | Marten is Nate Luman, and also attending is a |
| 09:19:28 | 23 | representative from Illumina, Marcus Burch. |
| 09:19:31 | 24 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: The reporter may swear in |
| 09:19:31 | 25 | the witness. |

| 09:19:33 | 1 | FLOYD ROMESBERG, Ph.D., |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:19:33 | 2 | having been first duly sworn, testified as follows: |
| 09:19:33 | 3 | |
| 09:19:33 | 4 | EXAMINATION |
| 09:19:41 | 5 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:19:42 | 6 | Q. Good morning, Dr. Romesberg. |
| 09:19:44 | 7 | A. Good morning. |
| 09:19:45 | 8 | Q. Could you please state your full name and |
| 09:19:47 | 9 | address for the record. |
| 09:19:47 | 10 | A. I'm Floyd Romesberg, 8109 Camino del Sur del |
| 09:19:53 | 11 | Sol, La Jolla, California. |
| 09:19:55 | 12 | Q. Okay. I know you've been deposed a few times |
| 09:19:59 | 13 | before in these IPR proceedings, but I just want to go |
| 09:20:02 | 14 | through some ground rules for this deposition. |
| 09:20:05 | 15 | Is that okay? |
| 09:20:05 | 16 | A. It is. |
| 09:20:08 | 17 | Q. Do you understand that today you're under oath? |
| 09:20:10 | 18 | A. I do. |
| 09:20:11 | 19 | Q. By that, do you understand that you are sworn |
| 09:20:13 | 20 | to tell the truth? |
| 09:20:15 | 21 | A. I do. |
| 09:20:16 | 22 | Q. Do you also understand that even though we're |
| 09:20:19 | 23 | not in front of a Court or in front of a jury, your |
| 09:20:22 | 24 | answers today have the same force and effect as if we |
| 09:20:27 | 25 | were in a courtroom with a judge and jury? |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|
| 09:20:29 | 1 | A. I understand. |
| 09:20:30 | 2 | Q. Are you prepared to answer my questions today? |
| 09:20:32 | 3 | A. I am. |
| 09:20:33 | 4 | Q. Is there anything that will prevent you from |
| 09:20:35 | 5 | giving me your full attention today? |
| 09:20:38 | 6 | A. There is not. |
| 09:20:39 | 7 | Q. Are you taking any medications or suffering |
| 09:20:42 | 8 | from any illness that would prevent you from |
| 09:20:45 | 9 | understanding my questions and answering them fully? |
| 09:20:48 | 10 | A. I am currently taking a medication, but it |
| 09:20:50 | 11 | would not prevent me from answering your questions |
| 09:20:53 | 12 | fully. |
| 09:20:55 | 13 | Q. Okay. So throughout the day you've gone |
| 09:20:57 | 14 | through this process before I'm going to ask you some |
| 09:21:00 | 15 | questions, and if you don't understand my question, |
| 09:21:03 | 16 | please ask me to clarify. |
| 09:21:05 | 17 | Is that okay? |
| 09:21:06 | 18 | A. That is okay. |
| 09:21:08 | 19 | Q. Now, if you don't ask me to clarify the |
| 09:21:11 | 20 | question, can we assume that you've understood the |
| 09:21:14 | 21 | question? |
| 09:21:15 | 22 | A. Yes. |
| 09:21:18 | 23 | Q. Also, throughout the day, your attorney may |
| 09:21:22 | 24 | interpose some objections. Now, unless you are |
| 09:21:26 | 25 | instructed by counsel not to answer, please go ahead and |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 09:21:29 | 1 | answer the question. |
| 09:21:30 | 2 | Understand? |
| 09:21:31 | 3 | A. I do. |
| 09:21:33 | 4 | Q. As you know, we have a court reporter recording |
| 09:21:35 | 5 | my questions and your answers today, so throughout the |
| 09:21:39 | 6 | day, we want to try to make things easier on her, and so |
| 09:21:43 | 7 | you need to make sure you give oral responses to my |
| 09:21:46 | 8 | questions. |
| 09:21:47 | 9 | Understood? |
| 09:21:48 | 10 | A. Yes. |
| 09:21:48 | 11 | Q. And we should also try not to speak over each |
| 09:21:50 | 12 | other, so please let me finish my question before you |
| 09:21:54 | 13 | start answering, and I will try to let you finish your |
| 09:21:58 | 14 | answer before I ask my next question. |
| 09:22:00 | 15 | Understood? |
| 09:22:01 | 16 | A. Yes. |
| 09:22:05 | 17 | Q. Okay. I'm going to take also take regular |
| 09:22:07 | 18 | breaks during the day, but if at any time you need a |
| 09:22:11 | 19 | break for anything, please ask me and we can take a |
| 09:22:14 | 20 | break. |
| 09:22:15 | 21 | Understood? |
| 09:22:16 | 22 | A. Yes. |
| 09:22:19 | 23 | Q. Now, have you been deposed since your last |
| 09:22:22 | 24 | deposition in these IPR proceedings? |
| 09:22:26 | 25 | A. No, I have not. |

| 09:22:28 | 1 | Q. Now, you previously testified that you were |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:22:30 | 2 | serving as an expert for Roche in a case against Enzo. |
| 09:22:35 | 3 | Is that correct? |
| 09:22:36 | 4 | A. I believe it's a case of Enzo against Roche. |
| 09:22:40 | 5 | Q. Okay. But you are serving as an expert in that |
| 09:22:42 | 6 | matter? |
| 09:22:43 | 7 | A. Yeah, but there's as I think I mentioned |
| 09:22:46 | 8 | then, there's been zero activity on that and there |
| 09:22:49 | 9 | hasn't been any activity since then. |
| 09:22:51 | 10 | Q. Okay. Just so I understand, there's no |
| 09:22:53 | 11 | activity since your last deposition? |
| 09:22:55 | 12 | A. Correct. |
| 09:22:56 | 13 | Q. Okay. So you haven't filed a declaration in |
| 09:22:59 | 14 | that matter? |
| 09:22:59 | 15 | A. No, I have not. |
| 09:23:00 | 16 | Q. Okay. You haven't been deposed? |
| 09:23:03 | 17 | A. No. |
| 09:23:06 | 18 | Q. Have you been engaged as an expert in any other |
| 09:23:09 | 19 | matter since your last deposition? |
| 09:23:11 | 20 | A. No. |
| 09:23:13 | 21 | Q. Okay. How much time have you spent on this IPR |
| 09:23:17 | 22 | proceeding to date? |
| 09:23:21 | 23 | A. This IPR? |
| 09:23:23 | 24 | Q. Yes. |
| 09:23:29 | 25 | A. I again, I I always have problems |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 09:23:33 | 1 | figuring this out. I should have known you'd ask me |
| 09:23:36 | 2 | this, so I should have figured it out. |
| 09:23:39 | 3 | 35 hours, 40 hours, I would maybe 50 hours |
| 09:23:44 | 4 | including reading, talking to counsel. |
| 09:23:50 | 5 | Q. Okay. Does that include your preparation for |
| 09:23:53 | 6 | the deposition today? |
| 09:23:54 | 7 | A. Yeah. |
| 09:23:56 | 8 | Q. Okay. |
| 09:23:57 | 9 | A. That's a rough estimate. |
| 09:24:05 | 10 | MR. SEGAL: His declaration? |
| 09:24:35 | 11 | I'm going to show you what's been previously |
| 09:24:38 | 12 | marked as Exhibit 2011. |
| 09:24:42 | 13 | (Exhibit 2011 was referred to.) |
| 09:24:47 | 14 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, before you start, I just |
| 09:24:49 | 15 | want to note that portions of his declaration have been |
| 09:24:52 | 16 | designated as confidential, so to the extent you get |
| 09:24:55 | 17 | into that portion of the declaration, we'll just need to |
| 09:24:57 | 18 | go on the confidential portion of the record. |
| 09:25:01 | 19 | MR. SEGAL: Okay. |
| 09:25:01 | 20 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:25:02 | 21 | Q. Do you recognize this document? |
| 09:25:03 | 22 | A. Yes. It would appear to be my declaration. |
| 09:25:05 | 23 | Q. And it's your declaration in this matter, this |
| 09:25:08 | 24 | proceeding? |
| 09:25:10 | 25 | A. Yes, it would appear to be. |

| 09:25:16 | 1 | Q. If you'll turn to the last page, page 43, is |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:25:23 | 2 | that your signature there? |
| 09:25:24 | 3 | A. It is. |
| 09:25:26 | 4 | Q. And you signed it on May 5th of this year? |
| 09:25:30 | 5 | A. Yes. |
| 09:25:34 | 6 | Q. Did you draft this declaration? |
| 09:25:36 | 7 | A. I participated in it. I read carefully all |
| 09:25:41 | 8 | aspects, every part of it, and worked with it, but I di |
| 09:25:49 | 9 | not actually write it. It was written by my lawyers at |
| 09:25:54 | 10 | Knobbe Martens. |
| 09:25:57 | 11 | Q. Did you make any changes after they wrote the |
| 09:26:00 | 12 | declaration? |
| 09:26:00 | 13 | A. Pretty extensively, all through discussion. |
| 09:26:06 | 14 | Q. Was anyone other than your attorneys at Knobbe |
| 09:26:10 | 15 | involved in drafting your declaration? |
| 09:26:13 | 16 | A. No. |
| 09:26:15 | 17 | Q. Are you aware that there is a another exper |
| 09:26:19 | 18 | that's testifying on behalf of Illumina in this matter? |
| 09:26:24 | 19 | A. Vaguely. |
| 09:26:25 | 20 | Q. Did you speak with this expert? |
| 09:26:27 | 21 | A. Did I speak with him? No, I did not, verbally |
| 09:26:32 | 22 | Ironically, I sent him an e-mail. It was |
| 09:26:36 | 23 | unintentional. At the time I didn't know he was an |
| 09:26:38 | 24 | expert and it was on an unrelated thing, and he sent me |
| 09:26:42 | 25 | an e-mail back, and that was the extent of it. |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. | INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|----------------|--|
| 09:26:45 | 1 | Q. | All right. Who was this expert? |
| 09:26:49 | 2 | A. | Metzker. |
| 09:26:50 | 3 | Q. | Metzker? |
| 09:26:51 | 4 | A. | Oh, God. This is how informal it was. |
| 09:26:56 | 5 | Q. | Is it Dr. Burgess? |
| 09:26:58 | 6 | A. | Yes, I'm sorry. No yes, it was Dr. Burgess. |
| 09:27:02 | 7 | Q. | Okay. |
| 09:27:03 | 8 | A. | Thank you. |
| 09:27:03 | 9 | Q. | So you didn't speak to him regarding this |
| 09:27:05 | 10 | matter? | |
| 09:27:05 | 11 | A. | No. |
| 09:27:06 | 12 | Q. | Okay. You sent him an e-mail recently? |
| 09:27:10 | 13 | A. | Maybe it was three two months ago. |
| 09:27:12 | 14 | Q. | And that was regarding? |
| 09:27:14 | 15 | A. | It was regarding some my lab works with the |
| 09:27:21 | 16 | evolutio | n of DNA polymerases and on a with a to |
| 09:27:27 | 17 | recogniz | e unnatural substrates, and we I had a |
| 09:27:31 | 18 | question | about an unnatural substrate that would have |
| 09:27:35 | 19 | nothing | to do with sequencing by synthesis, and I just |
| 09:27:40 | 20 | wondered | if he knew of anyone who had characterized it, |
| 09:27:44 | 21 | and he s | ent me back an e-mail that said no. |
| 09:27:50 | 22 | Q. | Can you turn to page 6 of your declaration. |
| 09:28:04 | 23 | | You'll see in paragraph 21 you list some |
| 09:28:08 | 24 | document | s that you've considered and reviewed in |
| 09:28:12 | 25 | connecti | on with providing this declaration. |

| Deposition of Flo | yd Ro | esberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA | CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|-------|--|-----------------|
| 09:28:14 | 1 | Is that right? | |
| 09:28:15 | 2 | A. That is right. | |
| 09:28:17 | 3 | Q. Are these the only materials you reli | ed on in |
| 09:28:20 | 4 | forming your opinion in your declaration? | |
| 09:28:24 | 5 | A. No. There were a couple other papers | that I |
| 09:28:28 | 6 | read that I believe are not listed. | |
| 09:28:33 | 7 | Q. And what are those papers? | |
| 09:28:35 | 8 | A. I don't have them. | |
| 09:28:37 | 9 | Q. Can you tell me | |
| 09:28:38 | 10 | A. Oh, what were they? | |
| 09:28:42 | 11 | Q. Yes. | |
| 09:28:42 | 12 | A. I thought you said where. | |
| 09:28:44 | 13 | They were a paper by an author named | Reardon |
| 09:28:47 | 14 | and a paper by an author named Handlon, and th | ey were |
| 09:28:52 | 15 | provided to me by my lawyers. | |
| 09:29:02 | 16 | Q. Do you know the date of these papers? | |
| 09:29:05 | 17 | A. I can estimate. I did look at them. | I've read |
| 09:29:08 | 18 | a lot of papers recently on this IPR. I think | they |
| 09:29:12 | 19 | were I believe the Handlon paper I'm thinki | ng was |
| 09:29:18 | 20 | 1988, and I think the Reardon paper was 1992, | |
| 09:29:21 | 21 | approximately. | |
| 09:29:26 | 22 | Q. Now, why didn't you list those papers | in |
| 09:29:28 | 23 | paragraph 21? | |
| 09:29:29 | 24 | A. Because I only saw them for the first | time last |
| 09:29:38 | 25 | week. | |

| 09:29:38 | 1 | So maybe I should clarify my answer. I did not |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:29:41 | 2 | use them for writing this declaration. I used them I |
| 09:29:44 | 3 | read them in preparation for this IPR, for this |
| 09:29:47 | 4 | deposition. |
| 09:29:49 | 5 | Q. Okay. So are there any references that aren't |
| 09:29:53 | 6 | listed or material that is not listed in paragraph 21 |
| 09:29:56 | 7 | that you relied on in rendering your opinions in the |
| 09:30:00 | 8 | declaration? |
| 09:30:01 | 9 | A. No. |
| 09:30:05 | 10 | I must have misunderstood your question. I'm |
| 09:30:08 | 11 | sorry. |
| 09:30:08 | 12 | Q. Who identified the documents and material |
| 09:30:11 | 13 | listed in paragraph 21? |
| 09:30:13 | 14 | A. Most of them, my lawyers. The there were |
| 09:30:17 | 15 | several specifically related to an aspect of that's |
| 09:30:21 | 16 | important to the IPR, specifically conditions that |
| 09:30:24 | 17 | denature DNA that I spent a particularly long time |
| 09:30:30 | 18 | looking at, looking for; and I think that none of them |
| 09:30:33 | 19 | wound up being as key as the ones are here, so they're |
| 09:30:36 | 20 | not listed. |
| 09:30:37 | 21 | And so they were not they were simply read, |
| 09:30:39 | 22 | but they didn't wind up being as relevant, so I didn't |
| 09:30:43 | 23 | use them and so I think that none of them wound up being |
| 09:30:47 | 24 | here. |
| 09:30:48 | 25 | So I think that in the end, I think all of them |
| | | |

| 09:30:50 | 1 | here, I believe, were provided by my lawyers. |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:30:58 | 2 | Q. So you mentioned some documents that you found |
| 09:31:00 | 3 | regarding denaturation. |
| 09:31:02 | 4 | Is that right? |
| 09:31:03 | 5 | A. Correct. |
| 09:31:04 | 6 | Q. And those are not listed here? |
| 09:31:06 | 7 | A. They are not. |
| 09:31:09 | 8 | Q. Do any of those documents contradict your |
| 09:31:13 | 9 | opinions in your |
| 09:31:15 | 10 | A. No. |
| 09:31:15 | 11 | Q declaration? |
| 09:31:17 | 12 | A. No, absolutely not. |
| 09:31:18 | 13 | Q. Do you remember the the first named |
| 09:31:21 | 14 | authors |
| 09:31:22 | 15 | A. No. |
| 09:31:22 | 16 | Q or the titles of these documents? |
| 09:31:24 | 17 | A. No. I apologize. I do not. But they did not |
| 09:31:28 | 18 | contradict in any way. They were the the the |
| 09:31:33 | 19 | important point was absolutely the same in all of them. |
| 09:31:37 | 20 | Q. Were these references provided to your |
| 09:31:39 | 21 | attorneys? |
| 09:31:42 | 22 | A. I I discussed it with them. I don't know |
| 09:31:45 | 23 | I don't remember if I actually provided them. |
| 09:31:59 | 24 | Q. Now, you mentioned the Reardon and Handlon |
| 09:32:01 | 25 | references that you reviewed in preparation for this |

| Deposition of Floy | yd Roi | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------|--------|---|
| 09:32:04 | 1 | deposition. |
| 09:32:05 | 2 | Is that right? |
| 09:32:05 | 3 | A. It is. |
| 09:32:08 | 4 | Q. Did your review of the Reardon and Handlon |
| 09:32:11 | 5 | references in any way change your opinions |
| 09:32:16 | 6 | A. No. |
| 09:32:16 | 7 | Q that are in your declaration? |
| 09:32:18 | 8 | A. No, it did not. |
| 09:32:29 | 9 | Q. Were there any documents that you located |
| 09:32:31 | 10 | through your own search that you were told not to |
| 09:32:34 | 11 | consider in rendering your opinions? |
| 09:32:36 | 12 | A. No. In fact, my lawyers were very clear |
| 09:32:44 | 13 | MS. SWAROOP: Dr. Romesberg, I would caution |
| 09:32:45 | 14 | you not to disclose communications with counsel. Those |
| 09:32:48 | 15 | are subject to privilege. |
| 09:32:49 | 16 | So answer that to the extent you can without |
| 09:32:52 | 17 | disclosing privileged communications. |
| 09:32:54 | 18 | THE WITNESS: No. They no, there were none |
| 09:32:56 | 19 | that I was told not to use. |
| 09:33:09 | 20 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:33:09 | 21 | Q. What did you do to prepare for today's |
| 09:33:11 | 22 | deposition? |
| 09:33:12 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, Dr. Romesberg, exclude |
| 09:33:15 | 24 | from your answer any specific reference to any specific |
| 09:33:16 | 25 | communications with counsel. You can testify generally |

| 09:33:18 | 1 | as to what you did to prepare. |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:33:20 | 2 | THE WITNESS: I met with the lawyers and I read |
| 09:33:23 | 3 | papers and patents, the material described in paragraph |
| 09:33:29 | 4 | 21 of my declaration. |
| 09:33:31 | 5 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:33:31 | 6 | Q. When did you meet with your lawyers? |
| 09:33:37 | 7 | A. Most recently, and the only dates that I can |
| 09:33:40 | 8 | explicitly remember are, I believe, Wednesday and |
| 09:33:47 | 9 | Thursday of last week two days last week, I believe |
| 09:33:51 | 10 | it was Wednesday and Thursday yesterday and |
| 09:33:54 | 11 | yesterday, and also one time earlier, maybe a month ago. |
| 09:34:05 | 12 | I came into the to this room and we |
| 09:34:09 | 13 | that's when we went through the the declaration |
| 09:34:12 | 14 | paragraph by paragraph. |
| 09:34:18 | 15 | Q. How long did you meet with your attorney last |
| 09:34:20 | 16 | week? Were they all-day meetings? |
| 09:34:23 | 17 | A. Yes, both days were all-day meetings, I think |
| 09:34:27 | 18 | seven to eight hours. |
| 09:34:29 | 19 | All day doing academic "all day" to me can |
| 09:34:33 | 20 | mean longer than that. |
| 09:34:35 | 21 | Q. How about yesterday? Was that an all-day |
| 09:34:38 | 22 | meeting? |
| 09:34:39 | 23 | A. No, it was not. I think we were done at 2:00. |
| 09:34:49 | 24 | Q. Did you discuss your deposition preparation |
| 09:34:52 | 25 | with anyone other than your attorneys? |

| 09:34:54 | 1 | A. No. |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:35:24 | 2 | MR. SEGAL: Dr. Romesberg, I'm going to hand |
| 09:35:26 | 3 | you what's been previously marked Exhibit 1001. It's |
| 09:35:30 | 4 | U.S. patent No. 7,566,537. |
| 09:35:36 | 5 | (Exhibit 1001 was referred to.) |
| 09:35:49 | 6 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:35:50 | 7 | Q. Have you seen this patent before? |
| 09:35:51 | 8 | A. Yes, I have. It would appear to be the |
| 09:35:53 | 9 | Illumina patent that is the subject of this IPR. |
| 09:35:56 | 10 | Q. Have you reviewed this patent? |
| 09:35:58 | 11 | A. Yes. |
| 09:35:59 | 12 | Q. Have you reviewed the claims of this patent? |
| 09:36:01 | 13 | A. Yes, I have. |
| 09:36:09 | 14 | Q. Have you reviewed the file history for this |
| 09:36:11 | 15 | patent? |
| 09:36:12 | 16 | A. That's a specific document, correct? |
| 09:36:16 | 17 | Q. By "file history," I mean the the documents |
| 09:36:20 | 18 | that are exchanged between the patent applicant and the |
| 09:36:23 | 19 | U.S. Patent and Trademark Office to obtain the patent. |
| 09:36:28 | 20 | Did you review that file? |
| 09:36:31 | 21 | A. I I'm not sure. I vaguely remember maybe |
| 09:36:36 | 22 | seeing it, but I might be mixing this up with a |
| 09:36:40 | 23 | different IPR that was very long, and I don't think I |
| 09:36:42 | 24 | read it. If it was provided to me, I didn't digest it |
| 09:36:47 | 25 | and retain it. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | | INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|----------|--|
| 09:36:51 | 1 | Q. | Do you know what claims are at issue in this |
| 09:36:54 | 2 | IPR proc | ceeding? |
| 09:37:01 | 3 | Α. | I don't understand the question. |
| 09:37:02 | 4 | Q. | Do you know what patent claims are at issue in |
| 09:37:06 | 5 | this pro | oceeding? |
| 09:37:08 | 6 | A. | So specifically I assumed that all of them were |
| 09:37:12 | 7 | at issue | e. I guess I'm I guess, then, the answer to |
| 09:37:15 | 8 | your que | estion would be no. |
| 09:37:26 | 9 | Q. | If you could take a look at claim 1. It's in |
| 09:37:35 | 10 | column 1 | .9. |
| 09:37:39 | 11 | | Are you there? |
| 09:37:40 | 12 | A. | I see it. |
| 09:37:41 | 13 | Q. | Claim 1 reads at the very beginning, "A method |
| 09:37:43 | 14 | of label | ing a nucleic acid molecule." |
| 09:37:47 | 15 | | Did I read that correctly? |
| 09:37:50 | 16 | А. | You did. |
| 09:37:50 | 17 | Q. | How would a person of ordinary skill in the art |
| 09:37:53 | 18 | as of Au | igust 2002 understand a method of labeling in the |
| 09:37:57 | 19 | context | of this claim? |
| 09:37:58 | 20 | | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope of |
| 09:38:01 | 21 | his decl | aration. |
| 09:38:02 | 22 | BY MR. S | SEGAL: |
| 09:38:03 | 23 | Q. | You can answer. |
| 09:38:04 | 24 | A. | I assume a person skilled in the art would |
| 09:38:06 | 25 | interpre | et it exactly as it says: That it was a method |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 09:38:10 | 1 | of having, producing, or using nucleotides that are |
| 09:38:19 | 2 | modified or labeled in some way that's useful. |
| 09:38:23 | 3 | Q. Now, a method of labeling is different than a |
| 09:38:26 | 4 | method of sequencing, correct? |
| 09:38:28 | 5 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, object as outside the |
| 09:38:29 | 6 | scope. |
| 09:38:32 | 7 | THE WITNESS: A method of labeling is different |
| 09:38:35 | 8 | than a method of its use; for example, for sequencing, |
| 09:38:38 | 9 | yeah. |
| 09:38:40 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:38:43 | 11 | Q. The next part of the claim, if you'll read with |
| 09:38:45 | 12 | me, states "the method comprising incorporating into the |
| 09:38:51 | 13 | nucleic acid molecule a nucleotide or nucleoside |
| 09:38:56 | 14 | molecule." |
| 09:38:56 | 15 | Did I read that portion correctly? |
| 09:39:00 | 16 | A. Yes. |
| 09:39:02 | 17 | Q. In the context of this claim, what would |
| 09:39:04 | 18 | "incorporating" mean to a person of ordinary skill in |
| 09:39:08 | 19 | the art as of August 2002? |
| 09:39:11 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Okay. I'm going to object as |
| 09:39:13 | 21 | outside the scope of Dr. Romesberg's declaration. |
| 09:39:18 | 22 | THE WITNESS: Are you asking |
| 09:39:19 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: The subject of the subject of |
| 09:39:20 | 24 | claim construction was not part of his opinions in this |
| 09:39:23 | 25 | case. |

| 09:39:23 | 1 | MR. SEGAL: He's giving an opinion as to the |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:39:25 | 2 | validity of the claims. He has to understand what they |
| 09:39:28 | 3 | mean to a person of ordinary skill in the art. |
| 09:39:30 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, I object to the extent |
| 09:39:31 | 5 | you're asking him to construe the claims. It's outside |
| 09:39:36 | 6 | the scope of his declaration. |
| 09:39:37 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: Your objection is noted. |
| 09:39:39 | 8 | THE WITNESS: So to clarify, you're asking if |
| 09:39:42 | 9 | one was given that sentence in a vacuum with no other |
| 09:39:45 | 10 | information, how would they interpret it? |
| 09:39:47 | 11 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:39:48 | 12 | Q. How would a person interpret that phrase that I |
| 09:39:50 | 13 | just read to you in the context of this patent? |
| 09:39:54 | 14 | If they're picking up this patent in August of |
| 09:39:56 | 15 | 2002, how would they understand that incorporation |
| 09:40:02 | 16 | phrase |
| 09:40:02 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objection. |
| 09:40:03 | 18 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:40:04 | 19 | Q to mean? |
| 09:40:05 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objection. Calls for a |
| 09:40:06 | 21 | legal conclusion, outside the scope. |
| 09:40:08 | 22 | THE WITNESS: I should answer? |
| 09:40:10 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: You can answer to the extent you |
| 09:40:11 | 24 | can. |
| 09:40:13 | 25 | THE WITNESS: I interpreted it as polymerase |

| 09:40:19 | 1 | mediated incorporation. I assume that someone then |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:40:22 | 2 | would have done the same thing. |
| 09:40:26 | 3 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:40:26 | 4 | Q. Now, this portion of the claim says includes |
| 09:40:32 | 5 | incorporating a nucleoside molecule. |
| 09:40:36 | 6 | How can you incorporate a nucleoside molecule |
| 09:40:41 | 7 | via polymerase? |
| 09:40:44 | 8 | A. That's that's straightforward. A |
| 09:40:47 | 9 | nucleoside, as opposed to a nucleotide, is whether it |
| 09:40:51 | 10 | depends on whether you're including the phosphate |
| 09:40:54 | 11 | moiety. |
| 09:40:55 | 12 | If you include a nucleoside sorry. If you |
| 09:40:59 | 13 | include a nucleoside monophosphate or a nucleotide |
| 09:41:03 | 14 | that's what you actually include during a reaction; |
| 09:41:05 | 15 | that's what you actually incorporate during a |
| 09:41:08 | 16 | reaction that certainly including the incorporation |
| 09:41:11 | 17 | of a nucleoside. It's just the nucleobase part. |
| 09:41:20 | 18 | It would not be traditional to call that a |
| 09:41:23 | 19 | nucleoside. You could call that a nucleoside moiety, I |
| 09:41:27 | 20 | guess, but if you're incorporating it the language is |
| 09:41:33 | 21 | a little loose by scientific standards, but I don't |
| 09:41:36 | 22 | think it would have been I don't think I think it |
| 09:41:38 | 23 | would have been understood. |
| 09:41:39 | 24 | It's a little vernacular, but it's clearly |
| 09:41:44 | 25 | referring to a the only reaction that a polymerase |

| 09:41:50 | 1 | performs. |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:41:50 | 2 | Q. So a nucleoside the molecule without a |
| 09:41:53 | 3 | triphosphate, that's what I mean by nucleoside. |
| 09:41:57 | 4 | A. Well, a nucleoside just means there's no |
| 09:41:59 | 5 | phosphate. |
| 09:41:59 | 6 | A triphosphate is a nucleoside, but people |
| 09:42:03 | 7 | often refer to that as a sorry is a nucleotide. |
| 09:42:06 | 8 | People often refer to that as a nucleoside |
| 09:42:10 | 9 | triphosphate, and so they sort of often shorten that to |
| 09:42:13 | 10 | a nucleoside. It is a little sloppy. |
| 09:42:16 | 11 | But a monophosphate is also a nucleotide, or a |
| 09:42:19 | 12 | nucleoside monophosphate. "Nucleotide monophosphate" |
| 09:42:23 | 13 | would be redundant. |
| 09:42:25 | 14 | Q. So a nucleoside without any phosphate groups, |
| 09:42:30 | 15 | is there a way to incorporate that into a nucleic acid |
| 09:42:35 | 16 | molecule? |
| 09:42:38 | 17 | A. By the strict definition of what a nucleoside |
| 09:42:42 | 18 | is, no. |
| 09:42:43 | 19 | Neither by a polymerase nor by chemical |
| 09:42:46 | 20 | synthesis. A polymerase reaction, you would need it to |
| 09:42:50 | 21 | be a nucleoside triphosphate. By for a chemical |
| 09:42:54 | 22 | synthesis, you would need it to be what's called a |
| 09:42:56 | 23 | nucleoside phosphoramidite. |
| 09:42:59 | 24 | They're not specifying here, but the claim is |
| 09:43:02 | 25 | clearly referring to a polymerase, so you would |

| 09:43:05 | 1 | immediately have thought of a nucleoside triphosphate |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:43:09 | 2 | being converted to a nucleoside monophosphate during the |
| 09:43:12 | 3 | reaction, and they're simply referring it to a nucleus, |
| 09:43:15 | 4 | as a nucleoside; and that's so can you show me |
| 09:43:19 | 5 | exactly where you're referring to, by the way? |
| 09:43:23 | 6 | Q. That phrase in claim 1, again, it says |
| 09:43:25 | 7 | "incorporating into the nucleic acid molecule a |
| 09:43:29 | 8 | nucleotide or nucleoside molecule." |
| 09:43:32 | 9 | A. So they sorry. So they do specify |
| 09:43:35 | 10 | nucleotide or nucleoside. Yeah. |
| 09:43:40 | 11 | It's not the way I would have written it, |
| 09:43:42 | 12 | but so was my answer sufficiently clear? |
| 09:43:46 | 13 | Q. Yes. |
| 09:43:46 | 14 | A. Okay. |
| 09:43:47 | 15 | Q. So the next part of the claim picks up "wherein |
| 09:43:50 | 16 | the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule has a base that is |
| 09:43:54 | 17 | linked to a detectable label via a cleavable linker and |
| 09:43:58 | 18 | the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule has a ribose or |
| 09:44:02 | 19 | deoxyribose sugar moiety." |
| 09:44:05 | 20 | Do you see that? |
| 09:44:10 | 21 | A. I'm sorry. I'm having trouble finding it. |
| 09:44:14 | 22 | Where does the sentence start? |
| 09:44:16 | 23 | Q. The portion of the claim picks up with the |
| 09:44:17 | 24 | "wherein," the third line of claim 1. |
| 09:44:20 | 25 | A. I have it, yes. |

| 09:44:21 | 1 | Q. Okay. And I just read that portion in. |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:44:24 | 2 | "Wherein the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule |
| 09:44:28 | 3 | has a base that is linked to a detectable label via a |
| 09:44:32 | 4 | cleavable linker and a nucleotide or nucleoside molecule |
| 09:44:36 | 5 | has a ribose or deoxyribose sugar moiety." |
| 09:44:40 | 6 | Do you see that? |
| 09:44:40 | 7 | A. I do. |
| 09:44:41 | 8 | Q. Okay. Did I read that correctly? |
| 09:44:43 | 9 | A. Yes. |
| 09:44:46 | 10 | Q. How would a person of ordinary skill understand |
| 09:44:48 | 11 | that portion of the claim? |
| 09:44:50 | 12 | MS. SWAROOP: And same objection. Outside the |
| 09:44:51 | 13 | scope of his declaration, calls for a legal conclusion. |
| 09:44:56 | 14 | THE WITNESS: I would interpret that as the |
| 09:45:00 | 15 | nucleoside or nucleotide that's being incorporated, it |
| 09:45:04 | 16 | has a nucleic base on it by definition, and they're |
| 09:45:09 | 17 | saying that that they're saying two things about it. |
| 09:45:12 | 18 | The nucleic base could be attached to a linker, |
| 09:45:15 | 19 | a cleavable linker, and it's also attached to a sugar, |
| 09:45:20 | 20 | being a ribose or a deoxyribose. They're just |
| 09:45:27 | 21 | specifying the type of nucleoside and a modification. |
| 09:45:31 | 22 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:45:31 | 23 | Q. What's the difference between a ribose and a |
| 09:45:34 | 24 | deoxyribose? |
| 09:45:37 | 25 | A. Hydroxyl group. The sugar is different. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 09:45:41 | 1 | Q. On a certain position? |
| 09:45:43 | 2 | A. Correct, yes. The C2 position. |
| 09:45:49 | 3 | Q. Okay. Just picking up again the claim where I |
| 09:45:52 | 4 | left off, the next part of the claim reads "wherein the |
| 09:45:56 | 5 | ribose or deoxyribose sugar moiety comprises a |
| 09:46:02 | 6 | protecting group attached via the 2' or 3' oxygen atom." |
| 09:46:07 | 7 | Do you see that? |
| 09:46:08 | 8 | A. I do. |
| 09:46:09 | 9 | Q. Did I read that correctly? |
| 09:46:10 | 10 | A. Yes. |
| 09:46:10 | 11 | Q. Again, in the context of this claim and in the |
| 09:46:12 | 12 | context of the patent, what would "protecting group" |
| 09:46:18 | 13 | mean to a person of ordinary skill as of August 2002? |
| 09:46:22 | 14 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope, |
| 09:46:24 | 15 | calls for a legal conclusion. |
| 09:46:26 | 16 | THE WITNESS: I read that as a group that could |
| 09:46:27 | 17 | be removed. |
| 09:46:38 | 18 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:46:38 | 19 | Q. That's all, just that the group can be removed? |
| 09:46:46 | 20 | A. Commonly the term "protecting group" is used in |
| 09:46:49 | 21 | synthetic chemistry when you have a functional group |
| 09:46:53 | 22 | that's reactive under conditions that you want to |
| 09:46:57 | 23 | specifically direct to a different part of the molecule, |
| 09:46:59 | 24 | and its reactivity would prevent specificity. |
| 09:47:05 | 25 | So you put on a protecting group. It prevents |

| Deposition of Floyd H | .omesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-----------------------|---|
| 09:47:08 1 | reaction, gives you the specificity that you wanted, and |
| 09:47:12 2 | it then can be removed. |
| 09:47:21 3 | Q. So the same definition would apply here? |
| 09:47:24 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope, |
| | |

09:47:26 5 calls for a legal conclusion. THE WITNESS: I would read that as "more or 09:47:34 6

09:47:36 7 less."

09:47:36 I mean I hesitate to use the word "exact" 8 09:47:39 9 because it's a little bit different, but you want to 09:47:42 10 include the nucleoside in a manner that you don't --09:47:50 11 where the additional reactivity would be continued 09:47:53 12 synthesis, and so your blocking group prevents that so 09:47:56 13 that gives you the specificity for a single 09:47:59 14 incorporation and the removability is similar, I guess. 09:48:09 15 BY MR. SEGAL:

09:48:09 16 Okay. This portion of the claim, it allows for Ο. 09:48:12 17 the protecting group to be only attached to the 2' 09:48:16 18 oxygen, correct?

09:48:17 19 MS. SWAROOP: Again, object to the form of the 09:48:18 20 question, object as outside the scope, calls for a legal 09:48:21 21 conclusion.

09:48:21 22 THE WITNESS: No, I think it says -- again, my 09:48:25 23 read of it is it says 2' or 3' oxygen atom.

BY MR. SEGAL: 09:48:30 24

09:48:30 25 Right. So one of the possibilities is that the Q.

| 09:48:33 | 1 | protecting group could be only attached to the 2' |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:48:34 | 2 | oxygen? |
| 09:48:38 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objections. Outside the |
| 09:48:40 | 4 | scope, calls for a legal conclusion. |
| 09:48:40 | 5 | THE WITNESS: Yeah, so in this case I'm going |
| 09:48:42 | 6 | to have to agree with my lawyer a little bit in that I |
| 09:48:45 | 7 | don't quite know how to construct legally what that |
| 09:48:48 | 8 | means. |
| 09:48:48 | 9 | I think that me, as a scientist, simply reading |
| 09:48:51 | 10 | this, it would say that protection of the 2' or the 3'; |
| 09:48:54 | 11 | and, again, aside from any legal implications of the |
| 09:49:00 | 12 | English language that I'm not familiar with, I assume |
| 09:49:05 | 13 | that would include a case where it's protected at the 2' |
| 09:49:09 | 14 | only. |
| 09:49:14 | 15 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:49:14 | 16 | Q. Again, back to the claim, the next part of the |
| 09:49:16 | 17 | claim reads, "and said protecting group can be modified |
| 09:49:19 | 18 | or removed to expose a 3' hydroxyl group." |
| 09:49:25 | 19 | Did I read that right? |
| 09:49:29 | 20 | A. Yes. |
| 09:49:33 | 21 | Q. How would a person of ordinary skill in the art |
| 09:49:36 | 22 | remove a protecting group from a 3' oxygen to expose a |
| 09:49:41 | 23 | 3' hydroxyl group? |
| 09:49:49 | 24 | A. How would one do that? |
| 09:49:50 | 25 | Q. Yeah. |

| 09:49:51 | 1 | A. Well, by today's standard, I would use an |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:49:55 | 2 | azidomethyl group. I guess that was a joke. |
| 09:49:59 | 3 | There's lots of ways. I guess I don't |
| 09:50:01 | 4 | understand the question. |
| 09:50:03 | 5 | By definition, what a protecting group is, is |
| 09:50:06 | 6 | it allows for chemical removal, exposing what you |
| 09:50:10 | 7 | protected; in this case, the hydroxyl group, so |
| 09:50:14 | 8 | Q. So the removal of the group on the 3' position, |
| 09:50:23 | 9 | that alone exposes the 3' hydroxyl? |
| 09:50:26 | 10 | A. A group |
| 09:50:27 | 11 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 09:50:27 | 12 | question. |
| 09:50:28 | 13 | THE WITNESS: If I if I understood your |
| 09:50:30 | 14 | question, a group attached to the 3' oxygen, its removal |
| 09:50:38 | 15 | would unmask, would leave behind a 3' hydroxyl. It |
| 09:50:46 | 16 | would not, if it were directly attached to the 3' |
| 09:50:50 | 17 | position, which is the carbon. |
| 09:50:52 | 18 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:50:53 | 19 | Q. Okay. Does the '537 patent give any examples |
| 09:50:59 | 20 | of removing a protecting group from the 3' oxygen to |
| 09:51:02 | 21 | expose a 3' hydroxyl group? |
| 09:51:06 | 22 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 09:51:07 | 23 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 09:51:09 | 24 | THE WITNESS: I would have to look back through |
| 09:51:11 | 25 | it. I read so many documents in the past week that I |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 09:51:15 | 1 | would have to look back through and refresh my memory. |
| 09:51:18 | 2 | Would you like me to do so? |
| 09:51:20 | 3 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:51:20 | 4 | Q. I think we'll do that on a break, so maybe we |
| 09:51:22 | 5 | can hold that for now. |
| 09:51:24 | 6 | A. Okay. |
| 09:51:28 | 7 | Q. How would a person of ordinary skill in the art |
| 09:51:30 | 8 | modify a protecting group that's attached to a 3' oxygen |
| 09:51:35 | 9 | to expose a 3' hydroxyl group? |
| 09:51:38 | 10 | A. My read on that and this is a common way |
| 09:51:41 | 11 | protecting groups work is that the modification |
| 09:51:43 | 12 | occurs distal far away from the oxygen, but it |
| 09:51:48 | 13 | triggers a reaction that ultimately releases the |
| 09:51:51 | 14 | hydroxyl group. |
| 09:51:56 | 15 | Again, it's a little bit of an odd language, |
| 09:51:59 | 16 | but that's kind of a common organic synthesis language. |
| 09:52:02 | 17 | And, again, what I read that is an event that produces |
| 09:52:06 | 18 | something, for example, that's unstable, that then |
| 09:52:08 | 19 | rearranges and leaves the hydroxyl group behind. |
| 09:52:11 | 20 | So in that context, what's the protecting group |
| 09:52:14 | 21 | and what's the modification is vague, and people use |
| 09:52:17 | 22 | that loosely. |
| 09:52:23 | 23 | Q. Okay. Is your basis for that understanding of |
| 09:52:25 | 24 | that term, is that supported by the '537 patent? |
| 09:52:29 | 25 | MR. BURCH: Counsel, this in no way has |

| 09:52:33 | 1 | anything to do with the opinions in Dr. Romesberg's |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:52:35 | 2 | declaration. He did not give any opinion with regard to |
| 09:52:38 | 3 | the disclosure of the '537 patent. This is way outside |
| 09:52:42 | 4 | the scope, so I think we need to move on. |
| 09:52:45 | 5 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:52:46 | 6 | Q. You can answer. |
| 09:52:47 | 7 | MS. SWAROOP: You can answer to the extent you |
| 09:52:49 | 8 | can. |
| 09:52:50 | 9 | THE WITNESS: Could you repeat your question. |
| 09:52:52 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:52:52 | 11 | Q. You just gave your understanding of what it |
| 09:52:54 | 12 | means to modify a protecting group at the 3' oxygen to |
| 09:52:58 | 13 | expose a 3' hydroxyl, right? |
| 09:53:01 | 14 | A. Correct. |
| 09:53:01 | 15 | Q. I'm just wondering if there's any support in |
| 09:53:03 | 16 | the '537 patent for your definition. |
| 09:53:06 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, can you point to any |
| 09:53:08 | 18 | portion of Dr. Romesberg's declaration in which he |
| 09:53:11 | 19 | discussed the specification or disclosure of the '537 |
| 09:53:14 | 20 | patent? |
| 09:53:15 | 21 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:53:15 | 22 | Q. You can answer. |
| 09:53:17 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: No. I want an answer to my |
| 09:53:18 | 24 | question. This is clearly outside the scope |
| 09:53:21 | 25 | MR. SEGAL: It's not. |

| 09:53:22 | 1 | MS. SWAROOP: and this in no way addresses |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:53:23 | 2 | his opinions in his declaration. |
| 09:53:25 | 3 | MR. SEGAL: It's not outside the scope. |
| 09:53:25 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: We're not going to permit |
| 09:53:27 | 5 | questioning with regard to disclosure of the '537 |
| 09:53:30 | 6 | patent. That's not at issue here, and it's not what he |
| 09:53:33 | 7 | opined on. |
| 09:53:34 | 8 | MR. SEGAL: He I'm entitled to know what his |
| 09:53:36 | 9 | understanding of how a person with ordinary skill in the |
| 09:53:39 | 10 | art would interpret these claims. |
| 09:53:41 | 11 | He's giving an opinion that these claims are |
| 09:53:44 | 12 | invalid and that requires a comparison of the prior art |
| 09:53:47 | 13 | to the claims as properly construed, so I'm entitled to |
| 09:53:52 | 14 | know what his understanding of those claims are. |
| 09:53:55 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: You've asked him questions about |
| 09:53:56 | 16 | the claims and asked him questions about claim |
| 09:53:57 | 17 | construction which, again, he never gave an opinion on. |
| 09:53:59 | 18 | Now you're moving on to the disclosure of the '537 |
| 09:54:03 | 19 | patent, which has nothing to do |
| 09:54:04 | 20 | MR. SEGAL: I'm asking if he has a basis. |
| 09:54:06 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: with the issues in this case. |
| 09:54:06 | 22 | We're not going to permit questioning on this |
| 09:54:09 | 23 | line of questioning, so you need to move on. It has |
| 09:54:11 | 24 | nothing to do with his opinions on this case. |
| | 25 | /// |

| 09:54:13 | 1 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:54:13 | 2 | Q. Do you have any basis for your understanding of |
| 09:54:15 | 3 | that term "modified" there? |
| 09:54:21 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Are you asking about the claims |
| 09:54:22 | 5 | in the patent? Because then I have an objection again |
| 09:54:25 | 6 | as outside the scope, calls for a legal conclusion. |
| 09:54:27 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: You've made your objection. |
| 09:54:29 | 8 | THE WITNESS: I certainly have an opinion based |
| 09:54:31 | 9 | on how that word is used in chemistry. |
| 09:54:36 | 10 | I don't recall how that opinion whether that |
| 09:54:40 | 11 | opinion was reinforced explicitly or implicitly in this |
| 09:54:44 | 12 | patent. I would have to go back and look through it. |
| 09:54:47 | 13 | It is certainly not what created that opinion. |
| 09:54:50 | 14 | That opinion on that use of the word "modified" I |
| 09:54:54 | 15 | believe would be common, and how that relates to the |
| 09:54:57 | 16 | patent, I would I would have to go back and look. |
| 09:55:04 | 17 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:55:05 | 18 | Q. Now, how would a person of ordinary skill in |
| 09:55:07 | 19 | the art remove a protecting group attached to the 2' |
| 09:55:12 | 20 | oxygen to expose a 3' hydroxyl group? |
| 09:55:15 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, object as outside the |
| 09:55:17 | 22 | scope of the declaration. |
| 09:55:18 | 23 | You can answer to the extent you can but, |
| 09:55:20 | 24 | again, we're way outside the scope. |
| 09:55:22 | 25 | THE WITNESS: The 2' and 3' oxygens exchange |
| | | |
| Deposition of Flo | Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. | | | |
|-------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 09:55:26 | 1 | things quickly. In fact, in a lot of cases you can't | | |
| 09:55:29 | 2 | make one or the other because they exchange. | | |
| 09:55:31 | 3 | I would assume it would be possible that if you | | |
| 09:55:35 | 4 | had something attached at the 2' position I'm sorry. | | |
| 09:55:43 | 5 | Could you repeat the question. | | |
| 09:55:44 | 6 | Was the question how would removal of the 2' | | |
| 09:55:47 | 7 | position unmask the 3'? | | |
| 09:55:50 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | |
| 09:55:50 | 9 | Q. Yeah. How would someone with skill in the art, | | |
| 09:55:53 | 10 | you know, remove a protecting group from the 2' oxygen | | |
| 09:55:56 | 11 | to expose a 3' hydroxyl? | | |
| 09:56:00 | 12 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, object as outside the | | |
| 09:56:02 | 13 | scope. | | |
| 09:56:03 | 14 | THE WITNESS: How would something how would | | |
| 09:56:05 | 15 | someone remove a protecting group that was attached only | | |
| 09:56:07 | 16 | to the 2' position? | | |
| 09:56:10 | 17 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | |
| 09:56:10 | 18 | Q. Correct. | | |
| 09:56:11 | 19 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, can you point to where | | |
| 09:56:13 | 20 | in his declaration he addresses this point. | | |
| 09:56:16 | 21 | THE WITNESS: I would have to think about that. | | |
| 09:56:17 | 22 | I'm not sure. | | |
| 09:56:21 | 23 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | |
| 09:56:21 | 24 | Q. And how about, again, the last possibility of | | |
| 09:56:23 | 25 | the claim here | | |

| 09:56:24 | 1 | A. Can I I'm sorry. Can I add something? |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:56:26 | 2 | Q. Sure. |
| 09:56:27 | 3 | A. I'm not trying to obfuscate the point. This is |
| 09:56:31 | 4 | complicated because the 2 and 3' hydroxyls exchange |
| 09:56:33 | 5 | things back and forth. They're right there; they're |
| 09:56:41 | 6 | both nucleophiles |
| 09:56:43 | 7 | THE REPORTER: Sir, you're going to have to |
| 09:56:43 | 8 | slow down. |
| 09:56:44 | 9 | THE WITNESS: Hydroxyls can exchange some |
| 09:56:46 | 10 | protecting groups, and so and they often can and |
| 09:56:50 | 11 | the protection of one often involves a covalent bond at |
| 09:56:54 | 12 | the other. That's called an acetal. |
| 09:56:58 | 13 | And so I don't I don't really feel |
| 09:57:01 | 14 | comfortable answering the question, because it's |
| 09:57:03 | 15 | complicated and I haven't thought it through. |
| 09:57:06 | 16 | If you'd like me to answer that question, I |
| 09:57:09 | 17 | would like a little time to think about it, and maybe |
| 09:57:13 | 18 | I'm not doing a very good job thinking about it sitting |
| 09:57:16 | 19 | here. |
| 09:57:17 | 20 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:57:17 | 21 | Q. Okay. Maybe later today we'll revisit that |
| 09:57:20 | 22 | question. |
| 09:57:21 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: And I'll continue to object as |
| 09:57:22 | 24 | outside the scope. |
| | 25 | /// |

09:57:24 BY MR. SEGAL: 1 Now, the last possibility is -- here, how would 09:57:24 2 Ο. 09:57:27 3 a person with ordinary skill in the art modify a 09:57:29 protecting group that's attached to a 2' oxygen to 4 expose a 3' hydroxyl group? 09:57:35 5 09:57:37 6 Α. That's --09:57:38 7 MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, again --09:57:38 Let me enter my objections. 8 09:57:38 9 This is way outside the scope. This is not in 09:57:41 10 Dr. Romesberg's declaration. 09:57:44 11 MR. SEGAL: I think we understand your 09:57:45 12 objection. 09:57:45 13 MS. SWAROOP: Well, then you need to conclude 09:57:47 14 this line of questioning, because this is way outside 09:57:50 15 the scope. 09:57:51 16 MR. SEGAL: I'm almost through this, and then 09:57:52 17 so --09:57:52 18 BY MR. SEGAL: 09:57:52 19 Q. Can you answer that, please. 09:57:53 20 MS. SWAROOP: You can answer to the extent you 09:57:53 21 can, and if you can't, you don't need to provide an 09:57:57 22 answer.

INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD.

09:57:5723THE WITNESS:That is a -- that is a more09:57:5824complicated version of the former question, which I09:58:0025couldn't answer, so . . .

Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D.

| 09:58:06 | 1 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
|----------|----|---|
| 09:58:06 | 2 | Q. Now, does claim 1 require the removal or |
| 09:58:11 | 3 | modification of the protecting group? |
| 09:58:13 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel |
| 09:58:14 | 5 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 09:58:14 | 6 | Q just by your understanding of the language? |
| 09:58:16 | 7 | MS. SWAROOP: we're not going to permit |
| 09:58:18 | 8 | further questioning with the scope of the claim and |
| 09:58:20 | 9 | asking this witness to give opinions on claim |
| 09:58:23 | 10 | construction. |
| 09:58:24 | 11 | This is not part of his declaration, and it's |
| 09:58:25 | 12 | not part of his opinion, so I'm not going to allow |
| 09:58:28 | 13 | further questioning on this. You need to move on to |
| 09:58:30 | 14 | different topics. |
| 09:58:32 | 15 | Dr. Romesberg, I'm instructing you not to |
| 09:58:34 | 16 | answer these questions. |
| 09:58:36 | 17 | You need to move on. |
| 09:58:38 | 18 | MR. SEGAL: We're going to have to go to the |
| 09:58:39 | 19 | Board, then, because he is giving an opinion, again, to |
| 09:58:41 | 20 | the as to the validity of these claims, so I'm |
| 09:58:44 | 21 | entitled to know his understanding. |
| 09:58:46 | 22 | He's also giving an opinion as to secondary |
| 09:58:50 | 23 | considerations, and then certain unexpected results are |
| 09:58:53 | 24 | commensurate with scope of the claim and that they |
| 09:58:55 | 25 | support a finding of non-obviousness. So I don't |

| 09:58:58 | 1 | understand how I can probe his opinions without |
|----------|----|--|
| 09:59:00 | 2 | understanding his understanding and what he believes a |
| 09:59:05 | 3 | person with ordinary skill in the art, how they would |
| 09:59:08 | 4 | interpret such claims. |
| 09:59:09 | 5 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, I disagree. He didn't |
| 09:59:11 | 6 | offer an opinion on claim construction. |
| 09:59:12 | 7 | You can ask him about what the prior art taught |
| 09:59:14 | 8 | and whether whether the prior art you're asserting |
| 09:59:17 | 9 | renders the claims obvious, and he can answer those |
| 09:59:20 | 10 | questions. |
| 09:59:20 | 11 | But you're asking him about the scope of the |
| 09:59:22 | 12 | claims, you're asking claim construction, you're asking |
| 09:59:24 | 13 | him to interpret claim terms. |
| 09:59:26 | 14 | None of that is in his declaration, and that's |
| 09:59:28 | 15 | clearly outside the scope, so he's not offering |
| 09:59:33 | 16 | MR. SEGAL: My understanding of the rules is |
| 09:59:35 | 17 | you have to go to the Board if you want him to not |
| 09:59:38 | 18 | answer a certain question, and we can pull out the rules |
| 09:59:41 | 19 | to that effect, but that's my understanding. |
| 09:59:43 | 20 | Unless you're telling him that it's |
| 09:59:46 | 21 | attorney-client privileged that my question is going |
| 09:59:48 | 22 | to impinge on that I'm entitled to get answers. |
| 09:59:53 | 23 | If you want to go to the Board, then I'm fine; |
| 09:59:55 | 24 | explain to the Board I'm entitled to understand how he |
| 09:59:59 | 25 | understands the claims that he's giving an opinion on. |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 10:00:01 | 1 | If you want to go to the Board I mean, I |
| 10:00:04 | 2 | only have a few more minutes of questioning. It's up to |
| 10:00:06 | 3 | you. |
| 10:00:06 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: You're asking him about the |
| 10:00:08 | 5 | requirements of claims. You've already gone through the |
| 10:00:10 | 6 | claims. |
| 10:00:10 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: Right, so let me finish my line of |
| 10:00:12 | 8 | the questioning. |
| 10:00:13 | 9 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, no, now you're not |
| 10:00:13 | 10 | asking him the requirements of the claims; you're asking |
| 10:00:14 | 11 | him to opine on the scope of the claims. That's not |
| 10:00:16 | 12 | that's not |
| 10:00:16 | 13 | MR. SEGAL: How he understands the claim is |
| 10:00:18 | 14 | what I'm asking him. I have a few more questions in |
| 10:00:20 | 15 | this area. |
| 10:00:21 | 16 | Do you want to go to the Board? |
| 10:00:23 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, let's move on to |
| 10:00:24 | 18 | something else, and we'll see whether we need to revisit |
| 10:00:27 | 19 | it later. |
| 10:00:28 | 20 | MR. SEGAL: No. This is the basis for some of |
| 10:00:30 | 21 | my later questions, so I need to understand how he |
| 10:00:32 | 22 | understands the claims. |
| 10:00:40 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: May why don't we take a break, |
| 10:00:42 | 24 | then, and we can |
| 10:00:43 | 25 | MR. SEGAL: Can I finish these line of |

| 10:00:45 | 1 | questions first? |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:00:46 | 2 | MS. SWAROOP: I'd prefer to take a break right |
| 10:00:49 | 3 | now, and you can pick up after that. |
| 10:00:51 | 4 | Can we go off the record? |
| 10:00:53 | 5 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Okay to go off? |
| 10:00:54 | 6 | MR. SEGAL: Yeah, that's fine. |
| 10:00:56 | 7 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are off the record. |
| 10:00:57 | 8 | The time is 10:00 o'clock. |
| 10:01:00 | 9 | (Recess from 10:01 a.m. to 10:05 a.m.) |
| 10:05:51 | 10 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are back on the record. |
| 10:05:53 | 11 | The time is 10:05. |
| 10:05:59 | 12 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, we had a discussion |
| 10:06:00 | 13 | before the break with regard to your line of |
| 10:06:02 | 14 | questioning. |
| 10:06:02 | 15 | As you know, I have an objection as to the |
| 10:06:04 | 16 | extent you're asking this witness about claim |
| 10:06:06 | 17 | construction. We'll permit you to do your limited |
| 10:06:09 | 18 | the limited questions that you said you had left, and |
| 10:06:12 | 19 | I'll object as needed. |
| 10:06:15 | 20 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:06:15 | 21 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, now, claim 1, it doesn't require |
| 10:06:21 | 22 | the removal or modification of the protecting group. |
| 10:06:24 | 23 | Do you agree with me there? |
| 10:06:26 | 24 | A. I'm going to read it real quick. |
| 10:06:28 | 25 | Q. Sure. |

| 10:06:40 | 1 | A. It would appear to require the possibility of |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:06:42 | 2 | removing it. My read of it and I'm no lawyer it |
| 10:06:46 | 3 | would not appear to require removal as part of the |
| 10:06:50 | 4 | claim, but it would appear to require the possibility of |
| 10:06:53 | 5 | removal, I guess is how I would read that. |
| 10:06:56 | 6 | Q. Okay. Now, the final part of the claim reads |
| 10:06:59 | 7 | "and the protecting group comprises an azido group." |
| 10:07:06 | 8 | Do you see that? |
| 10:07:07 | 9 | A. Yes, I do. |
| 10:07:08 | 10 | Q. Does this mean that the protecting group |
| 10:07:12 | 11 | contains an azido group? |
| 10:07:15 | 12 | A. I wish you wouldn't ask me that question, |
| 10:07:16 | 13 | because that word, "comprises," has come up in all three |
| 10:07:20 | 14 | of these IPRs and it appears to be a little bit |
| 10:07:24 | 15 | different from how I would use that word. |
| 10:07:26 | 16 | My understanding is that legally, it means that |
| 10:07:29 | 17 | it includes. |
| 10:07:33 | 18 | Q. So how many possible protecting groups are |
| 10:07:36 | 19 | encompassed by this claim? |
| 10:07:38 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:07:39 | 21 | question. Object as outside the scope and also calling |
| 10:07:43 | 22 | for a legal conclusion. |
| 10:07:47 | 23 | You can answer to the extent you can. |
| 10:07:49 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:07:49 | 25 | Q. You can answer. |

| 10:07:50 | 1 | A. Would you repeat the how many protecting |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:07:53 | 2 | groups does that entail? How many would that include? |
| 10:07:57 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objections. |
| 10:07:59 | 4 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:07:59 | 5 | Q. Correct. |
| 10:08:01 | 6 | A. Well, to be realistic, a handful, because |
| 10:08:07 | 7 | you're requiring removal of the azido, triggering or |
| 10:08:11 | 8 | modification in some way of the azido group, triggering |
| 10:08:14 | 9 | a deprotection of the 3' hydroxyl or the hydroxyl. |
| 10:08:21 | 10 | So you can imagine a really long chain of |
| 10:08:23 | 11 | carbons with an azido group at the end, and if that were |
| 10:08:26 | 12 | the case, there would be an infinite number of |
| 10:08:29 | 13 | possibilities, but that's clearly not what they're |
| 10:08:30 | 14 | talking about and no one would have thought of that, |
| 10:08:32 | 15 | because that would not allow for removal. |
| 10:08:35 | 16 | So removal means an event involving the azido |
| 10:08:38 | 17 | would have to unmask the hydroxyl. There's really |
| 10:08:40 | 18 | only even with the modification approach to doing it |
| 10:08:43 | 19 | where a change at the azido would trigger a reaction |
| 10:08:47 | 20 | that unmasks the hydroxyl, there's only a few carbon |
| 10:08:50 | 21 | atom a few bond links that could go through, so it |
| 10:08:53 | 22 | would there's really given the constraints of it |
| 10:08:56 | 23 | unmasking the hydroxyl, there's a handful. |
| 10:09:00 | 24 | Frankly, the one I would draw is is an |
| 10:09:04 | 25 | azidomethyl, but others might think of other things. |

| 10:09:11 | 1 | I would say a few, I guess, given that I'm |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:09:14 | 2 | not I mean I guess if you ask me to sit down right |
| 10:09:17 | 3 | now and come up with alternatives, maybe I could come up |
| 10:09:20 | 4 | with a couple. I don't know. |
| 10:09:24 | 5 | Q. Now, you're familiar with the reference |
| 10:09:28 | 6 | THE REPORTER: I'm sorry? |
| 10:09:29 | 7 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:09:29 | 8 | Q. Are you familiar with the reference Greene and |
| 10:09:31 | 9 | Wuts? |
| 10:09:33 | 10 | A. Sure. Yes. |
| 10:09:34 | 11 | Q. And your declaration discusses a little bit |
| 10:09:37 | 12 | about Greene and Wuts, correct? |
| 10:09:38 | 13 | A. It does. |
| 10:09:39 | 14 | Q. Now, does Greene and Wuts identify any |
| 10:09:43 | 15 | protecting groups for a hydroxyl group that contain an |
| 10:09:49 | 16 | azido group? |
| 10:09:50 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Do you have a copy of the |
| 10:09:51 | 18 | reference for the witness, Counsel? |
| 10:09:53 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:09:53 | 20 | Q. Can you answer it without |
| 10:09:54 | 21 | A. I certainly cannot could you repeat the |
| 10:09:57 | 22 | question. |
| 10:09:57 | 23 | Q. Does Greene and Wuts identify any protecting |
| 10:10:00 | 24 | groups for a hydroxyl group that contain an azido group? |
| 10:10:05 | 25 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objection. |

| 10:10:08 | 1 | I would also ask you to provide a copy to the |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:10:11 | 2 | witness. |
| 10:10:15 | 3 | THE WITNESS: I can't speak to how many. It |
| 10:10:18 | 4 | certainly contains a few. |
| 10:10:21 | 5 | For example, an azidomethyl group, I believe, |
| 10:10:24 | 6 | is in Greene and Wuts, because I talk about it a little |
| 10:10:27 | 7 | bit in my declaration, as a protecting group for a |
| 10:10:31 | 8 | phenolic for unstable alcohol sorry for a |
| 10:10:38 | 9 | particularly stable alcohol like a phenol. It does not |
| 10:10:42 | 10 | talk about them for aliphatic alcohols. |
| 10:10:47 | 11 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:10:47 | 12 | Q. How about for aliphatic alcohols, are there |
| 10:10:51 | 13 | any protecting groups listed in Greene and Wuts that |
| 10:10:55 | 14 | contain an azido group? |
| 10:10:57 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:10:58 | 16 | question. |
| 10:10:58 | 17 | Again, I would ask that you provide a copy of |
| 10:11:01 | 18 | Greene and Wuts to the witness if you're going to be |
| 10:11:03 | 19 | asking him questions about it. |
| 10:11:05 | 20 | THE WITNESS: I'm not sure. I off the top |
| 10:11:08 | 21 | of my head and this is evoking my knowledge, more |
| 10:11:11 | 22 | than my knowledge of Greene and Wuts I would think |
| 10:11:17 | 23 | I don't think so, but I'm not sure. |
| 10:11:26 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:11:26 | 25 | Q. So, again, in the context of the claim we |

| 10:11:29 | 1 | talked about this a little bit earlier the azido |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:11:32 | 2 | group azido protecting group can be on the can be |
| 10:11:36 | 3 | attached to the 2' oxygen; is that right? |
| 10:11:41 | 4 | A. By my read of |
| 10:11:42 | 5 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me object outside the scope |
| 10:11:45 | 6 | of the declaration. Again, object to the extent you're |
| 10:11:48 | 7 | calling asking for a legal conclusion. |
| 10:11:50 | 8 | You can answer. |
| 10:11:52 | 9 | THE WITNESS: By my reading, it would as I |
| 10:11:54 | 10 | said earlier, it would appear one of the possibilities |
| 10:11:57 | 11 | would be that it would be a modification of the 2' |
| 10:12:01 | 12 | hydroxyl group. |
| 10:12:02 | 13 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:12:03 | 14 | Q. Take a look at claim 2. The claim reads, "The |
| 10:12:09 | 15 | method of claim 1, wherein said incorporating is |
| 10:12:12 | 16 | accomplished via a terminal transferase, a polymerase or |
| 10:12:15 | 17 | a reverse transcriptase." |
| 10:12:17 | 18 | Did I read that correctly? |
| 10:12:19 | 19 | A. Yes. |
| 10:12:21 | 20 | Q. What is a terminal transferase? |
| 10:12:25 | 21 | A. It's an enzyme that takes single-stranded DNA |
| 10:12:30 | 22 | and adds nucleotides to it. So all three of what they |
| 10:12:34 | 23 | said, they gave this aim explicitly includes the |
| 10:12:39 | 24 | three enzymes that synthesize DNA. |
| 10:12:41 | 25 | They use different mechanisms. They have |

| 10:12:44 | 1 | different substrates. What they all have in common is |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:12:48 | 2 | they they'll synthesize oligonucleotides. |
| 10:12:53 | 3 | Q. So the substrate for a terminal transferase is |
| 10:12:56 | 4 | single-stranded DNA; is that correct? |
| 10:13:03 | 5 | A. I'm not pos I mean certainly a substrate is |
| 10:13:07 | 6 | single-stranded DNA. I'm not sure that it's the only |
| 10:13:10 | 7 | substrate. I think it's entirely possible that it would |
| 10:13:13 | 8 | actually act on a primer template. I'm not sure. |
| 10:13:19 | 9 | It's the its physiological function is to |
| 10:13:26 | 10 | work on primer templates where one strand is longer than |
| 10:13:33 | 11 | the other and so that it adds nucleotides to that longer |
| 10:13:37 | 12 | strand. |
| 10:13:39 | 13 | Whether it's more efficient whether it's |
| 10:13:43 | 14 | slightly less efficient with a fully single-stranded, |
| 10:13:48 | 15 | I'm not sure. So a lot of enzymes have don't have |
| 10:13:54 | 16 | one activity that they're not so specific, so I would |
| 10:14:00 | 17 | not feel comfortable saying that it's the only |
| 10:14:02 | 18 | substrate. |
| 10:14:05 | 19 | Q. Can terminal transferase be used for |
| 10:14:07 | 20 | sequencing? |
| 10:14:08 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:14:13 | 22 | THE WITNESS: Not in the context of adding |
| 10:14:15 | 23 | nucleotides to a single strand. But as I just |
| 10:14:18 | 24 | mentioned, it I'm not sure how efficient it is in |
| 10:14:22 | 25 | template-directed synthesis, so it certainly would not |

| 10:14:26 | 1 | act for sequencing if it had a single strand if it were |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:14:29 | 2 | not template-directed. Then obviously it would not. |
| 10:14:33 | 3 | That is an activity of terminal transferase. |
| 10:14:38 | 4 | I just don't I would I would have to see |
| 10:14:42 | 5 | if someone's run that experiment. |
| 10:14:44 | 6 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:14:44 | 7 | Q. So you don't know |
| 10:14:46 | 8 | A. I don't know. |
| 10:14:47 | 9 | Q essentially? |
| 10:14:50 | 10 | A. That is correct. |
| 10:14:51 | 11 | Q. What is reverse transcriptase? |
| 10:14:55 | 12 | A. Reverse this is another great example of an |
| 10:14:58 | 13 | enzyme that does more than one thing. |
| 10:15:00 | 14 | Reverse the physiological function, you |
| 10:15:02 | 15 | know, to the extent that we understand biology, clearly |
| 10:15:06 | 16 | one function of reverse transcriptase is due is to |
| 10:15:12 | 17 | take RNA and synthesize, in a template-directed manner, |
| 10:15:16 | 18 | DNA from it. So it's the opposite of an RNA polymerase, |
| 10:15:22 | 19 | and that process is called transcription and that's why |
| 10:15:28 | 20 | the enzyme is called reverse transcriptase, because it |
| 10:15:32 | 21 | does the opposite of transcription. |
| 10:15:35 | 22 | So it typically takes an RNA template and |
| 10:15:39 | 23 | synthesizes DNA from it. In this case, I believe that |
| 10:15:41 | 24 | it also will take a DNA template and synthesize DNA with |
| 10:15:45 | 25 | it. |

| 10:16:07 | 1 | MR. SEGAL: I'm handing you what's been |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:16:09 | 2 | previously marked Exhibit 1002. It's a U.S. patent |
| 10:16:13 | 3 | No. 6,664,079, and the first named inventor is Jingyue |
| 10:16:24 | 4 | Ju. |
| 10:16:26 | 5 | (Exhibit 1002 was referred to.) |
| 10:16:32 | 6 | MS. SWAROOP: Do you have a copy for me? |
| 10:16:34 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: I'm sorry. |
| 10:16:48 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:16:49 | 9 | Q. Have you reviewed this reference? |
| 10:16:51 | 10 | A. Yes, I have. This would appear to be what I'll |
| 10:16:54 | 11 | refer to as the Ju reference. |
| 10:17:02 | 12 | Q. I'd like to compare the Ju reference to the |
| 10:17:05 | 13 | elements in claim 1. I believe you sort of went through |
| 10:17:08 | 14 | this process during your first deposition. |
| 10:17:10 | 15 | Do you recall that? |
| 10:17:13 | 16 | A. No. |
| 10:17:17 | 17 | Q. If you'll turn back again to the '537 patent, |
| 10:17:28 | 18 | after that first "comprising" there, it says |
| 10:17:30 | 19 | "Incorporating into the nucleic acid molecule a |
| 10:17:35 | 20 | nucleotide or nucleoside molecule." |
| 10:17:40 | 21 | A. I'm sorry. Can you tell me exactly where |
| 10:17:41 | 22 | you're at? What line are you at? |
| 10:17:44 | 23 | Q. Line 2, right after the "comprising." |
| 10:17:46 | 24 | A. Yes. |
| 10:17:46 | 25 | Q. "Incorporating into the nucleic acid molecule a |

| 10:17:51 | 1 | nucleotide or nucleoside molecule," do you see that? |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:17:54 | 2 | A. I do. |
| 10:17:55 | 3 | Q. Okay. Now, would you agree with me that Ju |
| 10:17:58 | 4 | teaches incorporating nucleotides into nucleic acid |
| 10:18:03 | 5 | molecules as part of his SBS method? |
| 10:18:07 | 6 | A. Yes. |
| 10:18:07 | 7 | Q. Okay. The next part of the claim reads |
| 10:18:09 | 8 | "wherein the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule has a |
| 10:18:13 | 9 | base that is linked to a detectable label via a |
| 10:18:17 | 10 | cleavable and the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule has |
| 10:18:21 | 11 | a ribose or deoxyribose sugar moiety." |
| 10:18:26 | 12 | Do you see that? |
| 10:18:27 | 13 | A. I do. |
| 10:18:28 | 14 | Q. Does Ju's method disclose or teach using such a |
| 10:18:33 | 15 | nucleotide molecule? |
| 10:18:35 | 16 | A. I believe so. |
| 10:18:38 | 17 | Q. Next part of the claim says "wherein the ribose |
| 10:18:45 | 18 | or deoxyribose sugar moiety comprises a protecting group |
| 10:18:50 | 19 | attached via the 2' or 3' oxygen." |
| 10:18:53 | 20 | You would agree with me that Ju discloses using |
| 10:18:55 | 21 | a protecting group attached to the 3' oxygen with its |
| 10:18:57 | 22 | nucleotides for his SBS method? |
| 10:19:00 | 23 | A. I believe so. |
| 10:19:01 | 24 | Q. Next part of the claim says "said protecting |
| 10:19:04 | 25 | group can be modified or removed to expose a 3' hydroxyl |

| 10:19:08 | 1 | group." |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:19:09 | 2 | Would you agree with me that Ju discloses |
| 10:19:12 | 3 | removing the 3' protecting group to expose a 3' hydroxyl |
| 10:19:18 | 4 | group? |
| 10:19:18 | 5 | A. Yeah, Ju, at length, talks about the |
| 10:19:20 | 6 | requirements for that stuff being efficient. |
| 10:19:24 | 7 | Q. So if you look at that claim as a whole, would |
| 10:19:27 | 8 | you agree that the only element in claim 1 that is not |
| 10:19:30 | 9 | specifically taught by Ju is that the protecting group |
| 10:19:33 | 10 | comprises an azido group? |
| 10:19:35 | 11 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me state my objections. |
| 10:19:37 | 12 | I would object as outside the scope. I would |
| 10:19:39 | 13 | also object to the form of the question and object to |
| 10:19:41 | 14 | the extent you're calling asking for a legal |
| 10:19:43 | 15 | conclusion. |
| 10:19:46 | 16 | THE WITNESS: I'm not sure if I can do this or |
| 10:19:48 | 17 | not, but you're asking a specific question about |
| 10:19:51 | 18 | claim 1. |
| 10:19:52 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:19:52 | 20 | Q. Correct. |
| 10:19:53 | 21 | A. The the relationship between the two patents |
| 10:19:57 | 22 | is part of the importance part of that comparison |
| 10:20:00 | 23 | is in claim 8, and so you don't want me to evoke that? |
| 10:20:05 | 24 | You don't want me to describe how I read that and how |
| 10:20:08 | 25 | that informed my opinion about what each of the |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 10:20:10 | 1 | claims about what each patent claimed? |
| 10:20:14 | 2 | Q. Right now I'm asking you specifically about |
| 10:20:16 | 3 | claim 1. |
| 10:20:18 | 4 | A. So ignoring claim 8? |
| 10:20:20 | 5 | Q. Just about claim 1 |
| 10:20:22 | 6 | A. Okay. So |
| 10:20:21 | 7 | Q and you understand what I mean by the |
| 10:20:23 | 8 | elements and limitations of a claim? |
| 10:20:26 | 9 | A. No, I don't. |
| 10:20:27 | 10 | Q. So it's essentially |
| 10:20:29 | 11 | A. I mean I know what the English I apologize |
| 10:20:31 | 12 | for interrupting. |
| 10:20:33 | 13 | I know what the English words that you're |
| 10:20:34 | 14 | saying mean to me. |
| 10:20:35 | 15 | Q. Okay. What do they mean to you? |
| 10:20:37 | 16 | A. What is the claim saying specifically and what |
| 10:20:41 | 17 | is it not saying. |
| 10:20:42 | 18 | Q. Okay. I mean, using that definition, the |
| 10:20:48 | 19 | only would you agree that the only element in claim 1 |
| 10:20:51 | 20 | that is specifically not taught by the Ju reference is |
| 10:20:55 | 21 | that the protecting group comprises an azido group? |
| 10:20:59 | 22 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, let me object as outside |
| 10:21:01 | 23 | the scope, object to the form of the question, object to |
| 10:21:03 | 24 | the extent you're asking for a legal conclusion from |
| 10:21:06 | 25 | this witness. |

| 10:21:09 | 1 | THE WITNESS: Ignoring claim 8, then I think |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:21:17 | 2 | relative to claim 1 because the efficiency is not |
| 10:21:21 | 3 | implied in claim 1; that's implied in claim 8 it's |
| 10:21:27 | 4 | removal you know, could I I believe that's |
| 10:21:31 | 5 | correct. |
| 10:21:33 | 6 | I haven't sat down and compared the claims side |
| 10:21:36 | 7 | by side, but my recollection, I believe I believe |
| 10:21:39 | 8 | that's correct, comparing claim 1 to the Ju patent. |
| 10:21:43 | 9 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:21:43 | 10 | Q. If you look at claim 2, again, it's "The method |
| 10:21:46 | 11 | of claim 1, wherein said incorporating is accomplished |
| 10:21:49 | 12 | via a terminal transferase, a polymerase or a reverse |
| 10:21:53 | 13 | transcriptase." |
| 10:21:54 | 14 | Did I read that right? |
| 10:21:56 | 15 | A. Yes. |
| 10:21:57 | 16 | Q. Ju discloses using, for example, a polymerase |
| 10:22:00 | 17 | in his SBS methods? |
| 10:22:02 | 18 | A. Yes. |
| 10:22:06 | 19 | Q. If you look at claim 3, it says "The method of |
| 10:22:09 | 20 | claim 1, wherein the base is a deazapurine." |
| 10:22:12 | 21 | Did I read that right? |
| 10:22:14 | 22 | A. Yes. |
| 10:22:15 | 23 | Q. Ju teaches using nucleotides that have a |
| 10:22:20 | 24 | deazapurine? |
| 10:22:22 | 25 | A. I believe so. |

| 10:22:25 | 1 | Q. Well, just to confirm that, if you look at |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:22:28 | 2 | the the Ju reference, which is Exhibit 1002 if you |
| 10:22:33 | 3 | look at column 7, line 53 |
| 10:22:37 | 4 | A. Column 7. |
| 10:22:47 | 5 | Q. After the figures. |
| 10:22:59 | 6 | A. Yes. |
| 10:23:00 | 7 | Q. So you would agree that Ju teaches using |
| 10:23:05 | 8 | deazapurines? |
| 10:23:06 | 9 | A. Yes. |
| 10:23:09 | 10 | Q. Now, if you look at claim 4 of the '537 patent, |
| 10:23:15 | 11 | it reads "The method of claim 1, wherein the nucleotide |
| 10:23:19 | 12 | is a deoxyribonucleotide triphosphate." |
| 10:23:24 | 13 | Did I read that right? |
| 10:23:25 | 14 | A. Yes. |
| 10:23:26 | 15 | Q. Again, Ju teaches the use of |
| 10:23:28 | 16 | deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates? |
| 10:23:31 | 17 | A. Yes. |
| 10:23:32 | 18 | Q. Take a look at claim 5. |
| 10:23:35 | 19 | It says "The method of claim 1 wherein the |
| 10:23:38 | 20 | label is a fluorophore." |
| 10:23:41 | 21 | Ju teaches using fluorophores attached to its |
| 10:23:46 | 22 | nucleotides for use in his SBS methods? |
| 10:23:50 | 23 | A. Yes. |
| 10:23:51 | 24 | Q. And if you look at claim 8, it says "The method |
| 10:23:56 | 25 | according to claim 1, further comprising detecting the |

| 10:24:00 | 1 | detectable label and cleaving the cleavable linker." |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:24:03 | 2 | Does Ju teach detecting the detectable label on |
| 10:24:10 | 3 | its nucleotides and cleaving the cleavable linker? |
| 10:24:13 | 4 | A. Yes. |
| 10:24:21 | 5 | Q. Turn to column 10 of the of the in the Ju |
| 10:24:28 | 6 | patent, which is Exhibit 1002. If you look at around |
| 10:24:43 | 7 | line 4 I'm going to read this into the record. |
| 10:24:48 | 8 | "Any chemical group could be used as long as |
| 10:24:52 | 9 | the group 1) is stable during the polymerase reaction, |
| 10:24:55 | 10 | 2) does not interfere with the recognition of the |
| 10:24:58 | 11 | nucleotide analogue by polymerase as a substrate, and 3) |
| 10:25:02 | 12 | is cleavable." |
| 10:25:04 | 13 | Did I read that right? |
| 10:25:06 | 14 | A. Well, I would have read "is cleavable." |
| 10:25:08 | 15 | Q. "Is cleavable," right. I didn't have the right |
| 10:25:11 | 16 | emphasis. |
| 10:25:12 | 17 | A. No, you read it correctly. |
| 10:25:15 | 18 | Q. Okay. So in that in that statement there, |
| 10:25:18 | 19 | Ju's describing the requirements for his 3' hydroxyl |
| 10:25:25 | 20 | protecting group? |
| 10:25:26 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:25:27 | 22 | question. |
| 10:25:29 | 23 | THE WITNESS: I would not characterize this as |
| 10:25:31 | 24 | the place that he describes all of the requirements. |
| 10:25:33 | 25 | Later he talks about where he refers to |

| 10:25:36 | 1 | sections as the fundamental requirements of the method. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:25:40 | 2 | I would turn to that for what the actual requirements |
| 10:25:42 | 3 | are. |
| 10:25:43 | 4 | None of them are inconsistent with this. This |
| 10:25:45 | 5 | is sort of a this is a good part of them and so it |
| 10:25:48 | 6 | is they are these are some of the requirements for |
| 10:25:51 | 7 | the method. |
| 10:25:53 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:25:53 | 9 | Q. Well |
| 10:25:54 | 10 | A. Each of them are required. |
| 10:25:55 | 11 | Q. Well, specifically for the 3' hydroxyl |
| 10:25:59 | 12 | protecting group, are these Ju's requirements for the 3' |
| 10:26:04 | 13 | hydroxyl protecting group? |
| 10:26:05 | 14 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:26:06 | 15 | question. It's been asked and answered. |
| 10:26:08 | 16 | THE WITNESS: It's missing a requirement that's |
| 10:26:11 | 17 | articulated where he talks about the fundamental |
| 10:26:13 | 18 | requirements. |
| 10:26:14 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:26:16 | 20 | Q. Let me ask you some questions about the |
| 10:26:17 | 21 | azidomethyl group. |
| 10:26:20 | 22 | So as of August 2002, a person of ordinary |
| 10:26:24 | 23 | skill would know that an azidomethyl group is a chemical |
| 10:26:28 | 24 | group. |
| 10:26:29 | 25 | You would agree with me there, right? |

| 10:26:31 | 1 | A. Yes. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:26:32 | 2 | Q. Now, as of August 2002, a person of ordinary |
| 10:26:35 | 3 | skill in the art would have thought that azidomethyl |
| 10:26:39 | 4 | protecting group would be stable during the polymerase |
| 10:26:43 | 5 | reaction? |
| 10:26:44 | 6 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:26:45 | 7 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:26:47 | 8 | THE WITNESS: No, I don't know that people |
| 10:26:48 | 9 | would have thought that. |
| 10:26:50 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:26:50 | 11 | Q. Why? |
| 10:26:52 | 12 | A. Well, in Ju's patent, he talks about the |
| 10:26:56 | 13 | importance of the reversible terminator not being an |
| 10:27:00 | 14 | electrophile, and there is literature that suggests that |
| 10:27:06 | 15 | in some cases an azide could act as an electrophile, and |
| 10:27:10 | 16 | so that would have raised one's concern, because in a |
| 10:27:13 | 17 | paper by Canard, he describes there being a powerful |
| 10:27:16 | 18 | nucleophile in the enzyme in the polymerase active |
| 10:27:19 | 19 | site; and he, in fact, expressly calls out azides as |
| 10:27:23 | 20 | being potential electrophiles raising a problem. |
| 10:27:27 | 21 | So combining Ju and Canard, Ju states that you |
| 10:27:30 | 22 | can't have an electrophile; Canard states that an azide |
| 10:27:34 | 23 | is an electrophile. That would have probably raised |
| 10:27:37 | 24 | that would have raised concerns for using the azide. |
| 10:27:39 | 25 | One of the requirements is that it's stable during |

| 10:27:43 | 1 | incorporation, and obviously for it to act as a |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:27:47 | 2 | reversible terminator, if it if it did act as an |
| 10:27:51 | 3 | electrophile the way Canard describes, it would produce |
| 10:27:54 | 4 | an irreversible terminator. |
| 10:27:58 | 5 | Q. I want to ask you some questions about that |
| 10:28:00 | 6 | later. |
| 10:28:01 | 7 | A. Okay. |
| 10:28:01 | 8 | Q. But do you have any other basis to believe that |
| 10:28:06 | 9 | the azidomethyl group where someone with ordinary |
| 10:28:11 | 10 | skill in the art would not believe that the azidomethyl |
| 10:28:14 | 11 | protecting group would be stable during the polymerase |
| 10:28:16 | 12 | reaction? |
| 10:28:22 | 13 | A. Specifically are you asking would is there |
| 10:28:25 | 14 | any reason that people would have suspected that the |
| 10:28:27 | 15 | azidomethyl moiety would not have been stable, having |
| 10:28:31 | 16 | nothing to do with incorporability, having nothing to do |
| 10:28:34 | 17 | with reversibility; you're asking specifically for |
| 10:28:38 | 18 | stability? |
| 10:28:39 | 19 | Q. For stability. And I understand you gave your |
| 10:28:41 | 20 | answer with respect to a person of ordinary skill |
| 10:28:45 | 21 | suspecting that it would be an electrophile. I |
| 10:28:47 | 22 | understand that point. |
| 10:28:48 | 23 | I just want to know if there's any other basis |
| 10:28:50 | 24 | that I need to explore today per your answer. |
| 10:28:53 | 25 | A. Well, I guess and this is related Canard |

| 10:28:56 | 1 | actually supports his assertation that there are |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:28:59 | 2 | electrophiles that might be subject to attack in the |
| 10:29:02 | 3 | polymerase active site by noting that that AZT, which |
| 10:29:06 | 4 | has an azido group on it, can be recovered as the amine, |
| 10:29:10 | 5 | and after being provided to people, injected to |
| 10:29:15 | 6 | people, administered as a drug, and that would be |
| 10:29:17 | 7 | consistent with it acting as an electrophile. |
| 10:29:20 | 8 | Q. Okay. Other than |
| 10:29:22 | 9 | A. I'll |
| 10:29:23 | 10 | Q. Other than the electrophile basis, is there |
| 10:29:25 | 11 | anything else |
| 10:29:27 | 12 | A. Well, I'll say that that's consistent with it |
| 10:29:29 | 13 | becoming an irreversible terminator, and it being an |
| 10:29:32 | 14 | electrophile is one way that could have been. Someone |
| 10:29:34 | 15 | else could have said, Well, I don't believe it was |
| 10:29:36 | 16 | because it was an electrophile; I think it was reduced |
| 10:29:39 | 17 | by one of the many enzymes that reduce azides. |
| 10:29:42 | 18 | And so this simply might have raised to the |
| 10:29:45 | 19 | issue that they were reactive and that they could be |
| 10:29:48 | 20 | reduced to amines. |
| 10:29:50 | 21 | Other than that, I I don't see why anyone |
| 10:29:54 | 22 | would have I don't see a particular reason people |
| 10:29:59 | 23 | would have thought that the azides would be not stable |
| 10:30:02 | 24 | during polymerase incorporation, other than the two |
| 10:30:05 | 25 | cases that I mentioned. |

| 10:30:14 | 1 | Q. How about as of August 2002, would a person of |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:30:21 | 2 | ordinary skill in the art have thought that a nucleotide |
| 10:30:26 | 3 | with an azidomethyl protecting group would have been |
| 10:30:28 | 4 | incorporated by a polymerase? |
| 10:30:30 | 5 | And I'm just asking about incorporation. We |
| 10:30:33 | 6 | talked about stability a second ago, but incorporated. |
| 10:30:36 | 7 | A. Probably not, is my impression. I mean it's |
| 10:30:39 | 8 | always hard to guess, but it's my opinion that someone |
| 10:30:42 | 9 | skilled in the art I mean, look, lots of protecting |
| 10:30:44 | 10 | groups, if if that's specifically what we're talking |
| 10:30:48 | 11 | about lots had been discussed, and I don't think the |
| 10:30:51 | 12 | azide had been discussed. |
| 10:30:52 | 13 | So I think that the vast majority of the |
| 10:30:56 | 14 | literature was suggesting things like esters, aryl |
| 10:31:02 | 15 | esters or alkyl esters or MOM ethers, that kind of |
| 10:31:08 | 16 | thing; and so that the paucity, the absence of |
| 10:31:11 | 17 | discussion, would lead me to think that it was not in |
| 10:31:14 | 18 | the minds of people talking about it. It was not |
| 10:31:18 | 19 | considered I mean I can tell you my opinion is |
| 10:31:20 | 20 | probably as to why I think it probably wasn't |
| 10:31:24 | 21 | considered. |
| 10:31:25 | 22 | The azide group, if you wish to know; |
| 10:31:26 | 23 | otherwise the answer to the question is I do not |
| 10:31:30 | 24 | think it was I don't think it was commonly thought |
| 10:31:32 | 25 | likely to be a polymerase substrate. That's based on |

| 10:31:35 | 1 | the fact that it's never discussed. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:31:36 | 2 | And I can give you my opinion as to why I think |
| 10:31:39 | 3 | that might have been, but that's just my opinion. |
| 10:31:42 | 4 | Q. Let me ask you, you mentioned AZT earlier. |
| 10:31:44 | 5 | And AZT is incorporated by polymerase, correct? |
| 10:31:48 | 6 | A. AZT is incorporated by a very error-prone |
| 10:31:52 | 7 | polymerase, so a sloppy polymerase, and I think that was |
| 10:31:55 | 8 | a big part of why people were interested in it, because |
| 10:31:58 | 9 | it did not inhibit the high fidelity enzymes that are |
| 10:32:02 | 10 | required for, for example, replication of a genome or |
| 10:32:05 | 11 | sequencing by synthesis in a case where you need high |
| 10:32:09 | 12 | fidelity DNA replication. |
| 10:32:11 | 13 | The very reason, I think, at least a lot of the |
| 10:32:13 | 14 | early ideas as to why AZT was, in fact, a good drug was |
| 10:32:19 | 15 | because it intentionally avoided any polymerase worth a |
| 10:32:23 | 16 | darn and went after only those polymerases that are so |
| 10:32:29 | 17 | sloppy that they don't discriminate. That's the |
| 10:32:33 | 18 | that's the mechanism of its action. |
| 10:32:36 | 19 | Q. Now, back in 2002, would one with skill in the |
| 10:32:39 | 20 | art been able to modify or engineer polymerases to |
| 10:32:45 | 21 | improve their ability to incorporate nucleotides |
| 10:32:51 | 22 | A. In 2002? |
| 10:32:51 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me |
| 10:32:51 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:32:51 | 25 | Q with 3' oxygen protecting groups? |

| 10:32:53 | 1 | MS. SWAROOP: object to the form of the |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:32:55 | 2 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:33:00 | 3 | THE WITNESS: I certainly in 2002, people, |
| 10:33:02 | 4 | including myself, were interested in that kind of |
| 10:33:06 | 5 | question. |
| 10:33:08 | 6 | I worked very my lab worked very hard, so my |
| 10:33:14 | 7 | opinion is that no one else in the world but me could |
| 10:33:17 | 8 | have done it. |
| 10:33:17 | 9 | That's kind of a joke. Many scientists like to |
| 10:33:20 | 10 | think that way. |
| 10:33:21 | 11 | But that's something that we worked very hard |
| 10:33:23 | 12 | on establishing a system to try to do, not specifically |
| 10:33:28 | 13 | for the case that you mentioned, but in a more broad |
| 10:33:31 | 14 | sense, of all polymerases to be able to take modified |
| 10:33:35 | 15 | substrates, including that type of modification. |
| 10:33:39 | 16 | We spent years getting a system to work, and so |
| 10:33:47 | 17 | what I would say that it was definitely state of the |
| 10:33:50 | 18 | art and that there were probably we, by far, |
| 10:33:53 | 19 | developed the most sophisticated system to do it. We've |
| 10:33:58 | 20 | developed the most robust system to do it in academics. |
| 10:34:03 | 21 | I can't speak to industry. I don't know what's not |
| 10:34:05 | 22 | published. |
| 10:34:06 | 23 | To this day, it's the most state-of-the-art way |
| 10:34:09 | 24 | to do it. So in 2002 are you asking whether it was |
| 10:34:13 | 25 | common to think that you could do that? Is that what |

| 10:34:15 | 1 | the question is? |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:34:16 | 2 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:34:16 | 3 | Q. Whether one of ordinary skill in the art would |
| 10:34:19 | 4 | believe that they would be able to do that. |
| 10:34:21 | 5 | A. Judging from the response of my reviews on |
| 10:34:25 | 6 | grants that I submitted, that it was not common, then |
| 10:34:26 | 7 | the answer would be no; people did not believe that you |
| 10:34:29 | 8 | could. |
| 10:34:29 | 9 | Q. They would believe that as of 2002, they |
| 10:34:32 | 10 | wouldn't be able to either choose one of the number of |
| 10:34:35 | 11 | polymerases that were available or modify such |
| 10:34:39 | 12 | polymerases to be able to incorporate an azidomethyl |
| 10:34:45 | 13 | group that was attached to the 3' oxygen? |
| 10:34:48 | 14 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:34:48 | 15 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:34:51 | 16 | THE WITNESS: I think it's very likely that |
| 10:34:53 | 17 | people would have been people would have not |
| 10:34:54 | 18 | considered that a likely possibility. |
| 10:35:02 | 19 | The whole field of protein evolution, evolving |
| 10:35:08 | 20 | proteins to do things, is an extraordinarily difficult |
| 10:35:12 | 21 | task today. Much progress has been made in the last 10 |
| 10:35:15 | 22 | years. |
| 10:35:16 | 23 | So in 2002, were people starting to make |
| 10:35:17 | 24 | progress? A handful of groups, including mine, sure. |
| 10:35:21 | 25 | No one thought it was easy. To this day, it's not easy. |
| | | |

| 10:35:25 | 1 | There's simply a little bit more success today. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:35:28 | 2 | 2002, I included this in grants that I |
| 10:35:33 | 3 | submitted to the NIH, and they always said, Wow, that |
| 10:35:36 | 4 | would be amazing if you could do that, but good luck. |
| 10:35:41 | 5 | So it was certainly not someone would not |
| 10:35:43 | 6 | have looked at that and said, Huh, we could simply |
| 10:35:45 | 7 | evolve a polymerase to do it. |
| 10:35:50 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:35:51 | 9 | Q. Are you aware if some researchers were able |
| 10:35:53 | 10 | to to get 3' oxygen protecting group nucleotide |
| 10:35:57 | 11 | analogues with 3' oxygen protecting groups, they were |
| 10:36:00 | 12 | able to get incorporation and termination of a of a |
| 10:36:06 | 13 | template growing strand using the using a particular |
| 10:36:12 | 14 | polymerase? |
| 10:36:13 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:36:14 | 16 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:36:17 | 17 | THE WITNESS: I'm aware that people were |
| 10:36:18 | 18 | looking for that. I'm aware that a lot of groups were |
| 10:36:22 | 19 | tried. I think the O-Allyl was amongst was maybe |
| 10:36:28 | 20 | uniquely successful, an O-Allyl protecting group, and |
| 10:36:32 | 21 | even that was limited, meaning a very broad panel of |
| 10:36:35 | 22 | polymerases were looked at and it was the only one that |
| 10:36:39 | 23 | showed any promise, in my opinion; and that, again, just |
| 10:36:42 | 24 | testifies to how difficult I think the problem was. |
| 10:36:45 | 25 | Look, the 3' hydroxyl group mechanistically |

| 10:36:50 | 1 | needs to bind the magnesium ion on the active site. It |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:36:55 | 2 | needs to be activated for attack on the next incoming |
| 10:36:57 | 3 | triphosphate. And part sorry. Part of its binding |
| 10:36:59 | 4 | mechanism involves chelating, binding to a metal ion in |
| 10:37:03 | 5 | the active site, if you're going to go putting groups on |
| 10:37:07 | 6 | here. |
| 10:37:07 | 7 | Frankly, my intuition is I'm amazed any of them |
| 10:37:11 | 8 | work, because it's such a mechanistically central part |
| 10:37:14 | 9 | of the enzyme. |
| 10:37:16 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:37:16 | 11 | Q. But you would agree that there were some |
| 10:37:17 | 12 | researchers that had some success prior to August 2002? |
| 10:37:21 | 13 | A. Sure. But the question I'm answering is |
| 10:37:23 | 14 | whether it was considered straightforward or whether it |
| 10:37:26 | 15 | was considered you know, whether it was considered |
| 10:37:28 | 16 | sort of it was certainly not considered easy, and the |
| 10:37:34 | 17 | very few examples maybe only the O-Allyl, |
| 10:37:38 | 18 | partially and the many, many examples of failure I |
| 10:37:42 | 19 | think support that's what that's what I'm saying, |
| 10:37:46 | 20 | is that amongst the natural polymerases, these this |
| 10:37:49 | 21 | is simply not something that's common. |
| 10:37:54 | 22 | Q. With respect to that last requirement that Ju |
| 10:37:58 | 23 | lists in that in column 10 that we just read earlier, |
| 10:38:02 | 24 | as of 2002, a person of ordinary skill would have |
| 10:38:07 | 25 | thought that the azidomethyl could be cleaved from a 3' |

| 10:38:12 | 1 | oxygen. |
|----------|----|---|
| 10:38:13 | 2 | Would you agree with me? |
| 10:38:14 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Objection to the form of the |
| 10:38:15 | 4 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 10:38:18 | 5 | THE WITNESS: No, I would not agree with you, |
| 10:38:19 | 6 | and that's simply it depends on how you read |
| 10:38:22 | 7 | "cleavable." If you read "cleavable" in the absence of |
| 10:38:26 | 8 | anything else in this document, then I might agree with |
| 10:38:29 | 9 | you. |
| 10:38:30 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:38:30 | 11 | Q. Let's just take that first question. |
| 10:38:32 | 12 | In the absence of anything else in the |
| 10:38:35 | 13 | document, is it is an azidomethyl group attached to a |
| 10:38:41 | 14 | 3' oxygen, is it cleavable and would and my question |
| 10:38:44 | 15 | actually is, would a person of ordinary skill expect |
| 10:38:48 | 16 | that it to be cleavable in 2002? |
| 10:38:51 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 10:38:52 | 18 | question; incomplete question. And object as outside |
| 10:38:57 | 19 | the scope. |
| 10:38:58 | 20 | THE WITNESS: You're sort of asking two |
| 10:38:59 | 21 | questions. |
| 10:39:00 | 22 | One is, is it cleavable in the absence of any |
| 10:39:02 | 23 | other consideration? You don't need to have much skill |
| 10:39:04 | 24 | in any art to know that you could cleave that. You |
| 10:39:07 | 25 | could heat it to a million degrees and you'll get a |

| 10:39:10 | 1 | bunch of atoms and that's cleaved. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:39:13 | 2 | By saying "someone skilled in the art," I |
| 10:39:16 | 3 | assume you as I define it here, it's a |
| 10:39:17 | 4 | sequencing-by-synthesis person, so I'm going to assume |
| 10:39:20 | 5 | that person is constrained by the requirements for |
| 10:39:24 | 6 | sequencing by synthesis. |
| 10:39:25 | 7 | So can I answer your question as to whether or |
| 10:39:27 | 8 | not it's cleavable in that context? |
| 10:39:29 | 9 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:39:29 | 10 | Q. Sure. |
| 10:39:30 | 11 | A. Then, no, I do not believe that azidomethyl was |
| 10:39:34 | 12 | known to be cleavable. |
| 10:39:36 | 13 | Q. How about just cleavable from a nucleotide, |
| 10:39:39 | 14 | without destroying the other covalent bonds from a |
| 10:39:47 | 15 | nucleotide? Was that known from 2002? |
| 10:39:49 | 16 | MS. SWAROOP: Same objection. |
| 10:39:50 | 17 | THE WITNESS: I think it was known that that |
| 10:39:51 | 18 | was a problem; that, no, 2002 not cleavable. |
| 10:40:07 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 10:40:07 | 20 | Q. If you look at the turning back to the Ju |
| 10:40:09 | 21 | reference, you would agree that Ju said that for a 3' |
| 10:40:15 | 22 | hydroxyl capping group, small chemical moieties are |
| 10:40:20 | 23 | preferred? |
| 10:40:20 | 24 | A. I'd have to find where he said that but, yes, I |
| 10:40:23 | 25 | do remember him talking about that. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 10:40:25 | 1 | Q. You would agree with me that an azidomethyl is |
| 10:40:29 | 2 | a small chemical moiety? |
| 10:40:31 | 3 | A. "Small" is a relative term. Is it small |
| 10:40:35 | 4 | relative to an O-Methyl? No. |
| 10:40:38 | 5 | Is it small relative to a naphthyl group? Yes. |
| 10:40:42 | 6 | So I guess |
| 10:40:44 | 7 | Q. How about this: Is it similar in size to an |
| 10:40:47 | 8 | allyl in a MOM group? |
| 10:40:53 | 9 | A. Again, I'm not trying to be difficult. That's |
| 10:40:56 | 10 | a difficult question, because size the question of |
| 10:40:58 | 11 | size, shape matters. |
| 10:41:00 | 12 | In a three-dimensional thing object, you |
| 10:41:04 | 13 | might have a lot of freedom for size in one dimension, |
| 10:41:08 | 14 | and it might be a long narrow tube and so you might |
| 10:41:11 | 15 | have very little freedom in any other dimension; or, you |
| 10:41:16 | 16 | may have a a little pocket, in which case you can |
| 10:41:20 | 17 | have something like a phenyl group, that's sort of round |
| 10:41:25 | 18 | like that, that maybe sort of is within, but you can't |
| 10:41:29 | 19 | take something like an azide that's long. |
| 10:41:32 | 20 | So, again, I apologize. I don't mean to be |
| 10:41:33 | 21 | difficult, but it's not a simple question. You know, |
| 10:41:36 | 22 | when I read this, I read people using the word "small" |
| 10:41:39 | 23 | or "large" or "efficient," these are very qualitative |
| 10:41:43 | 24 | terms that you really need to describe the system that |
| 10:41:45 | 25 | you're talking about to appreciate. |

| 10:41:48 | 1 | I would think that with an azide an azide is |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:41:53 | 2 | a very long molecule. It's a long, narrow molecule. |
| 10:41:56 | 3 | It's three atoms linear. That means you've got to |
| 10:42:00 | 4 | have oh, about, I'm guessing, five angstroms of |
| 10:42:04 | 5 | linear space; half a nanometer. |
| 10:42:08 | 6 | For an enzyme, that's a lot of space, and you |
| 10:42:11 | 7 | have to have the space to accommodate that and it can't |
| 10:42:15 | 8 | wrap around. So it's like a MOM group. A MOM group is |
| 10:42:16 | 9 | only single bond, so it can contort and twist to fit |
| 10:42:20 | 10 | into a site. An azide doesn't have that ability. |
| 10:42:24 | 11 | So is it small? You know, is it's smaller |
| 10:42:27 | 12 | than a naphthyl group. Is it as small as a MOM or an |
| 10:42:34 | 13 | O-Allyl? It depends on what you're trying to fit it |
| 10:42:38 | 14 | into. |
| 10:42:38 | 15 | In some cases in an absolute sense, in like a |
| 10:42:41 | 16 | solvent environment where you have a solvent that's able |
| 10:42:44 | 17 | to adapt to whatever it wants, yeah, certainly in that |
| 10:42:49 | 18 | particular case, an azide might be similar to a MOM or |
| 10:42:53 | 19 | an allyl. |
| 10:42:56 | 20 | In an an anisotropic that's the word that |
| 10:43:00 | 21 | scientists love to use to describe this exact |
| 10:43:02 | 22 | phenomenon. Isotropic means the same in all dimensions. |
| 10:43:07 | 23 | Anisotropic means not the same in all dimensions, so |
| 10:43:11 | 24 | once you're in an anisotropic environment, I would call |
| 10:43:16 | 25 | that unpredictable. I would not say that they're the |

| 10:43:19 | 1 | same. |
|----------|----|--|
| 10:43:20 | 2 | Q. How about with respect to just to, like |
| 10:43:22 | 3 | atomic size? Are they similar in that respect? |
| 10:43:26 | 4 | A. In terms of volume? In |
| 10:43:29 | 5 | Q. Like molecular weight. |
| 10:43:30 | 6 | A. Oh, in terms of molecular weight. Sure, |
| 10:43:36 | 7 | percentagewise. |
| 10:43:40 | 8 | But, again, that's like saying that if you take |
| 10:43:42 | 9 | a linear arrangement of atoms that's very long and |
| 10:43:48 | 10 | compared to a case where you wrap them around themselves |
| 10:43:50 | 11 | that's like a little baseball, I would say those are |
| 10:43:53 | 12 | similar molecular weight. |
| 10:43:55 | 13 | Those might be very those might be identical |
| 10:43:57 | 14 | molecular weight but have very different shapes, and so |
| 10:43:59 | 15 | the only thing I'm trying to emphasize is that if you're |
| 10:44:01 | 16 | talking because I believe what we're talking about |
| 10:44:03 | 17 | here is expectation of incorporability into the |
| 10:44:07 | 18 | polymerase active site volume is not a it's |
| 10:44:14 | 19 | certainly not the only requirement. |
| 10:44:17 | 20 | Molecular weight is not a particularly |
| 10:44:22 | 21 | correlated phenomenon with these sorts of things, and |
| 10:44:25 | 22 | what is correlated is physical chemical properties; |
| 10:44:28 | 23 | things like specific dimensions, H-bonding, ionic |
| 10:44:33 | 24 | charge, polarity. Things like that are much more |
| 10:44:38 | 25 | important, and people who think about substrates think |
| 10:44:41 | 1 | about that much more. |
|--|--|---|
| 10:44:43 | 2 | No one talks about, Oh, this might this be a |
| 10:44:46 | 3 | substrate; what's its molecular weight? |
| 10:44:52 | 4 | Q. Now, we've just been talking about the allyl |
| 10:44:55 | 5 | and MOM groups. |
| 10:44:59 | 6 | Ju specifically suggests the allyl and MOM |
| 10:45:02 | 7 | group as possible protecting groups for the 3' hydroxyl. |
| 10:45:08 | 8 | A. He does. |
| 10:45:09 | 9 | Q. Is that right? |
| 10:45:10 | 10 | A. Yes. |
| 10:45:10 | 11 | Q. Now, when the allyl and MOM groups are attached |
| 10:45:13 | 12 | to the 3' oxygen, that's then an ether; am I correct |
| 10:45:17 | 13 | there? |
| 10:45:18 | 14 | A. In both cases, yes. |
| | | |
| 10:45:19 | 15 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 | 15 16 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 | 15 16 17 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl groupto the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether?A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 | 15 16 17 18 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl groupto the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether?A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attachif you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 | 15 16 17 18 19 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 10:45:43 | 15 16 17 18 19 20 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything will be an ether, because that's the definition of an |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 10:45:43 10:45:46 | 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything will be an ether, because that's the definition of an ether. |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 10:45:43 10:45:46 10:45:48 | 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything will be an ether, because that's the definition of an ether. MR. SEGAL: Can we take a break? |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 10:45:43 10:45:48 10:45:48 | 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything will be an ether, because that's the definition of an ether. MR. SEGAL: Can we take a break? THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going off the |
| 10:45:19 10:45:25 10:45:29 10:45:36 10:45:40 10:45:43 10:45:43 10:45:50 10:45:51 | 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 | Q. Okay. And when you attach an azidomethyl group to the 3' oxygen, is that also an ether? A. Yes. Pretty much anything that you attach if you're attaching a carbon to an oxygen and I can't imagine you'd be attaching everything else everything will be an ether, because that's the definition of an ether. MR. SEGAL: Can we take a break? THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going off the record. This is the end of Disk No. 1. The time is |

| 10:45:56 | 1 | (Recess from 10:45 a.m. to 11:06 a.m.) |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:06:25 | 2 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going back on the |
| 11:06:27 | 3 | record. This is the beginning of Disk No. 2. The time |
| 11:06:29 | 4 | is 11:06. |
| 11:06:31 | 5 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:06:32 | 6 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, if you could take out your |
| 11:06:35 | 7 | declaration again it's Exhibit 2011. Please turn to |
| 11:06:41 | 8 | paragraph 29. |
| 11:06:56 | 9 | Now, in this paragraph, you have identified |
| 11:06:59 | 10 | four requirements for Ju's method; is that right? |
| 11:07:02 | 11 | A. Yes. |
| 11:07:05 | 12 | Q. Now, is it your testimony that a person of |
| 11:07:08 | 13 | ordinary skill in the art would only choose a protecting |
| 11:07:11 | 14 | group for the 3' hydroxyl that could satisfy these |
| 11:07:15 | 15 | conditions? |
| 11:07:18 | 16 | A. I believe that's what Ju teaches. I don't know |
| 11:07:25 | 17 | that I have an opinion on what anyone else might do. |
| 11:07:31 | 18 | People do all sorts of things for all sorts of |
| 11:07:34 | 19 | crazy ideas. Ju teaches these, so if you are following |
| 11:07:39 | 20 | Ju's teachings, then you would want something that |
| 11:07:42 | 21 | satisfied these. |
| 11:07:44 | 22 | I won't I don't care to think about I |
| 11:07:48 | 23 | mean, like I said, people do incorrect things, people do |
| 11:07:53 | 24 | things that are unanticipated, and so I'm not commenting |
| 11:07:58 | 25 | on that. |

| 11:08:02 | 1 | Q. Now, in 2002, would you agree that a person of |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:08:07 | 2 | ordinary skill in the art would need to test various |
| 11:08:13 | 3 | protecting groups to determine if such a group would |
| 11:08:16 | 4 | satisfy the requirements that you list in paragraph 29? |
| 11:08:21 | 5 | A. There are components that would require |
| 11:08:23 | 6 | testing. There are components I think that are very |
| 11:08:26 | 7 | obvious that would not require testing, because they're |
| 11:08:29 | 8 | just known in the literature. So some of it would |
| 11:08:32 | 9 | require testing. |
| 11:08:33 | 10 | So if you could ask me about a specific |
| 11:08:35 | 11 | requirement, I could tell you whether I think that would |
| 11:08:38 | 12 | require testing. |
| 11:08:45 | 13 | Q. So look at requirement No. 2, "The four |
| 11:08:51 | 14 | nucleotide analogues need to be efficiently and |
| 11:08:53 | 15 | faithfully incorporated by DNA polymerase as terminators |
| 11:08:56 | 16 | in the polymerase reaction." |
| 11:08:58 | 17 | You would agree with me that in 2002, a person |
| 11:09:01 | 18 | of ordinary skill would have to test a protecting group |
| 11:09:04 | 19 | to determine whether, in fact, it meets that |
| 11:09:07 | 20 | requirement? |
| 11:09:08 | 21 | A. Yes, if it had not been tested in the |
| 11:09:10 | 22 | literature and then correct, yes. |
| 11:09:17 | 23 | Q. Now, how about with respect to No. 3 that |
| 11:09:21 | 24 | you've listed in paragraph 29, "the tag and the group |
| 11:09:24 | 25 | capping the 3' hydroxyl need to be removed with high |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 11:09:28 | 1 | yield to allow the incorporation of the next |
| 11:09:32 | 2 | nucleotide"? |
| 11:09:32 | 3 | A. Yes. |
| 11:09:33 | 4 | Q. You would agree with me that one of skill in |
| 11:09:36 | 5 | the art would need to test to see if that you could |
| 11:09:40 | 6 | achieve that requirement? |
| 11:09:42 | 7 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:09:43 | 8 | question and object as outside the scope. |
| 11:09:45 | 9 | You can answer. |
| 11:09:46 | 10 | THE WITNESS: Yes. |
| 11:10:20 | 11 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:10:20 | 12 | Q. If you'll turn to paragraph 31 of your |
| 11:10:23 | 13 | declaration, which is Exhibit 2011. |
| 11:10:31 | 14 | Now, you reference Ju and say that "Ju teaches |
| 11:10:34 | 15 | that protecting groups 'with electrophiles such as |
| 11:10:38 | 16 | ketone groups are not suitable for protecting the 3' |
| 11:10:43 | 17 | hydroxyl of the nucleotide in enzymatic reactions due to |
| 11:10:48 | 18 | the existence of strong nucleophiles in the |
| 11:10:53 | 19 | polymerase.'" |
| 11:10:54 | 20 | Is that right? Is that part of your opinion? |
| 11:10:56 | 21 | A. I'm quoting Ju there. That's out of his |
| 11:10:59 | 22 | that's out of the patent, so that's what Ju's teaching. |
| 11:11:05 | 23 | Q. Do you agree with Ju there? |
| 11:11:11 | 24 | A. Sure. Sure. If it's if you have an |
| 11:11:14 | 25 | electrophile and if the polymerase reacted with it in a |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LT |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 11:11:19 | 1 | way that was unintended, that would be a problem. |
| 11:11:26 | 2 | Q. Now, Ju cites to a Canard reference. |
| 11:11:32 | 3 | Is that correct? |
| 11:11:32 | 4 | A. It is. |
| 11:11:34 | 5 | Q. And Ju just to be clear, Ju's citing to |
| 11:11:37 | 6 | Canard to support that quote from Ju that I just read |
| 11:11:41 | 7 | into the record? |
| 11:11:42 | 8 | A. I believe so. |
| 11:11:45 | 9 | Q. Now, when Ju says "ketone," isn't Canard |
| 11:11:51 | 10 | actually describing carbonyl groups? |
| 11:11:56 | 11 | A. A carbonyl group a ketone contains a |
| 11:12:00 | 12 | carbonyl group, an ester contains a carbonyl group; so |
| 11:12:05 | 13 | if you say if one person says a "ketone" and another |
| 11:12:10 | 14 | person says a "carbonyl," there's no inconsistency |
| 11:12:13 | 15 | there. |
| 11:12:17 | 16 | A carbonyl group is a rather broader term |
| 11:12:21 | 17 | that includes in addition to ketones; esters, amides. |
| 11:12:30 | 18 | Q. So when Ju is talking about an electrophile |
| 11:12:34 | 19 | such as ketone groups, what atom of the ketone group is |
| 11:12:41 | 20 | the electrophile? |
| 11:12:44 | 21 | A. The carbonyl. It's actually two atoms. It's |
| 11:12:47 | 22 | the carbonyl, so it's the C=O that's the electrophile. |
| 11:12:59 | 23 | Q. Ju talks about strong nucleophiles in the |
| 11:13:03 | 24 | polymerase; is that correct? |
| 11:13:05 | 25 | A. Yes. |

| 11:13:09 | 1 | Q. What strong nucleophiles are present in the |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:13:11 | 2 | active site of polymerases? |
| 11:13:15 | 3 | A. Enzymes proteins in general have lots of |
| 11:13:19 | 4 | nucleophiles. Are you asking what what are common |
| 11:13:26 | 5 | nucleophiles? |
| 11:13:27 | 6 | So if if I was one of skill in the art and I |
| 11:13:30 | 7 | read that polymerase active sites contain a strong |
| 11:13:33 | 8 | nucleophile, are you asking what I would have guessed |
| 11:13:36 | 9 | they would likely be? |
| 11:13:38 | 10 | Q. Yes, and what one of ordinary skill in the art |
| 11:13:43 | 11 | would understand them to be. |
| 11:13:44 | 12 | A. The side chain of a lysine amino acid would be |
| 11:13:48 | 13 | one possibility; the side chain of a serine amino acid, |
| 11:13:52 | 14 | the side chain of a histidine amino acid, the thiol side |
| 11:14:00 | 15 | chain of a cysteine, an activated water molecule. So |
| 11:14:07 | 16 | enzymes use lots of mechanisms to have strong |
| 11:14:12 | 17 | nucleophiles, and those would be some of the common ones |
| 11:14:16 | 18 | that one might have suspected. |
| 11:14:25 | 19 | And also, if I could elaborate I guess a little |
| 11:14:27 | 20 | bit further, in 2002, people certainly knew that there |
| 11:14:30 | 21 | were metals in a polymerase active site, two of them, |
| 11:14:34 | 22 | and I guess one might have thought a likely candidate |
| 11:14:37 | 23 | was an activated water molecule. That would just be |
| 11:14:40 | 24 | sort of standard chemistry. |
| 11:14:47 | 25 | Q. So, again, the list that you provided to me, |

| 11:14:50 | 1 | what is the most reactive nucleophile that would be |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:14:53 | 2 | present and be able to react with the electrophile in a |
| 11:15:02 | 3 | ketone group? |
| 11:15:03 | 4 | A. All of those. Are you asking which one I think |
| 11:15:05 | 5 | is the most common? |
| 11:15:07 | 6 | Q. Well, I'll ask that question. |
| 11:15:09 | 7 | What is the most common? |
| 11:15:12 | 8 | A. They're all common; maybe a side chain amine |
| 11:15:20 | 9 | because they form Schiff bases with the carbonyl. |
| 11:15:25 | 10 | That's the result of the nucleophile attacking the |
| 11:15:28 | 11 | carbonyl and you dehydrate it, and it's a common |
| 11:15:31 | 12 | mechanism. |
| 11:15:34 | 13 | But there are lots of common mechanisms. I |
| 11:15:36 | 14 | don't think I don't think anyone there are so many |
| 11:15:39 | 15 | candidates as to what that electrophile that |
| 11:15:41 | 16 | nucleophile could have been. That's one thing enzymes |
| 11:15:46 | 17 | do, is they have nucleophiles. |
| 11:15:48 | 18 | People study what those nucleophiles are. I |
| 11:15:51 | 19 | mean any time you get a new enzyme, you study it, and |
| 11:15:56 | 20 | get years and years of studying an enzyme to figure out |
| 11:16:00 | 21 | what specific nucleophile it is. |
| 11:16:02 | 22 | Q. So, again, of the list that you gave me of |
| 11:16:06 | 23 | these nucleophiles, which ones are reactive enough to |
| 11:16:11 | 24 | attack the the electrophiles of the ketone group? |
| 11:16:16 | 25 | A. Any of them could be. I mean so what enzymes |

| 11:16:23 | 1 | do is they have active sites where they activate |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:16:28 | 2 | nucleophiles. Serine proteases attack a carbonyl group |
| 11:16:32 | 3 | by activating a serine hydroxyl group. |
| 11:16:38 | 4 | As I mentioned, there's an enzyme lots of |
| 11:16:41 | 5 | enzymes use side chain amines. Histidine is another |
| 11:16:47 | 6 | common one. |
| 11:16:48 | 7 | Q. What do you think well, what is Canard |
| 11:16:54 | 8 | referring to that he believes what nucleophile of the |
| 11:16:58 | 9 | polymerase does Canard believe is reacting with the |
| 11:17:02 | 10 | electrophiles of the ketone groups? |
| 11:17:04 | 11 | A. I don't think Canard knows. |
| 11:17:06 | 12 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me object to the form of the |
| 11:17:08 | 13 | question, and I'd also ask to the extent that you're |
| 11:17:11 | 14 | asking the witness about a reference, that you provide |
| 11:17:14 | 15 | him with a copy. |
| 11:17:17 | 16 | THE WITNESS: Again, let me change that |
| 11:17:19 | 17 | question not change the question. |
| 11:17:20 | 18 | Let me add something to the former question |
| 11:17:23 | 19 | where you're asking about what people would have |
| 11:17:25 | 20 | suspected was the nucleophile. |
| 11:17:27 | 21 | I think people probably would have suspected it |
| 11:17:30 | 22 | had something to do with those metals. |
| 11:18:05 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: I'm handing you what's been |
| 11:18:07 | 24 | previously marked as Exhibit 2019, a reference with the |
| 11:18:13 | 25 | first author Bruno Canard. |

| 11:18:18 | 1 | (Exhibit 2019 was referred to.) |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:18:25 | 2 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:18:25 | 3 | Q. Is this the Canard reference that Ju cites to? |
| 11:18:30 | 4 | A. I believe so, yes. It appears to be. |
| 11:18:39 | 5 | Q. If you'll turn to I guess it's the last page |
| 11:18:43 | 6 | of the Canard reference, 10863, you cite a sentence from |
| 11:18:55 | 7 | Canard which I believe is at the very bottom of that |
| 11:19:01 | 8 | left-hand column: "Strikingly, the central nitrogen of |
| 11:19:05 | 9 | the 3'-azido group of AZT bears a partial positive |
| 11:19:12 | 10 | charge in a position similar to the carbonyl group of |
| 11:19:15 | 11 | 3'-esterified nucleotides, and the 3'-azido group of AZT |
| 11:19:21 | 12 | is metabolized into a 3'-amino group in vivo." |
| 11:19:26 | 13 | Is that the portion of Canard that you're |
| 11:19:29 | 14 | referencing in your declaration? |
| 11:19:32 | 15 | A. It is. |
| 11:19:33 | 16 | Q. Is it your position that the central nitrogen |
| 11:19:36 | 17 | of an azido group is an electrophile? |
| 11:19:45 | 18 | A. Are you asking what my position is today, or |
| 11:19:47 | 19 | what I think the average person of skill in the art |
| 11:19:49 | 20 | would have thought in 2002? |
| 11:19:57 | 21 | Q. Let's take both of those questions. |
| 11:19:59 | 22 | What would the person of ordinary skill in the |
| 11:20:02 | 23 | art thought in 2002? |
| 11:20:05 | 24 | A. I think the person would have read the if |
| 11:20:08 | 25 | someone read the Canard paper, I assume they would have |

| 11:20:13 | 1 | assumed that that central nitrogen could act as an |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:20:16 | 2 | electrophile. |
| 11:20:18 | 3 | Q. And what is your understanding today? |
| 11:20:23 | 4 | A. I'd be suspicious of that. |
| 11:20:27 | 5 | Q. What do you base your suspicions on? |
| 11:20:31 | 6 | A. It tends in a lot of reactivity of azides, |
| 11:20:36 | 7 | you tend not to get reaction there. So if you just |
| 11:20:41 | 8 | think about the reactivity of azides which |
| 11:20:44 | 9 | incidentally is a lot better understood today than it |
| 11:20:47 | 10 | was 10 years ago, 12 years ago it just it would |
| 11:20:51 | 11 | be it would not be the most likely site for |
| 11:20:55 | 12 | reactivity. |
| 11:20:56 | 13 | But what I will say is, again, what they're |
| 11:20:58 | 14 | talking about here is in an enzyme active site, and |
| 11:21:02 | 15 | enzyme active sites have a way of reacting where they |
| 11:21:05 | 16 | want to react; and so most people's opinion about that |
| 11:21:08 | 17 | central nitrogen not being electrophilic today is based |
| 11:21:13 | 18 | on simple reactivity of an azide in solution with |
| 11:21:17 | 19 | something that you're mixing, not an enzyme. |
| 11:21:20 | 20 | Enzymes are structured environments. They |
| 11:21:23 | 21 | position nucleophiles at specific places, so what I |
| 11:21:27 | 22 | think the Canard paper is saying is he's saying there's |
| 11:21:31 | 23 | this nucleophile, and it can attack these carbonyl |
| 11:21:35 | 24 | groups because they are in this position; and, look, |
| 11:21:38 | 25 | this azide and I'm going to add a little bit to it. |

| 11:21:42 | 1 | If I were writing this today, what I would say |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:21:44 | 2 | is this position does not typically act as an |
| 11:21:48 | 3 | electrophile, but in the enzyme active site it appears |
| 11:21:51 | 4 | to, because enzyme active sites position I mean this |
| 11:21:56 | 5 | is what they do: They position nucleophiles at specific |
| 11:22:00 | 6 | places, or electrophiles, or reactive centers, to do |
| 11:22:03 | 7 | chemistry in a way that they evolved to do. |
| 11:22:05 | 8 | And if there's something if there's an |
| 11:22:07 | 9 | electrophile that's that's positioned specifically to |
| 11:22:12 | 10 | go after a certain site, then it's not unreasonable to |
| 11:22:17 | 11 | think that it's the reactivity of the azide in that |
| 11:22:21 | 12 | context would be different. |
| 11:22:23 | 13 | So I guess that's what I would if I were |
| 11:22:26 | 14 | reading this paper today, that's probably what I would |
| 11:22:29 | 15 | think. I would think, Oh, well, that's interesting; |
| 11:22:30 | 16 | usually azides don't react that way, but apparently |
| 11:22:34 | 17 | enzymes are cool. Enzymes do what they do. |
| 11:22:42 | 18 | Q. Now, in 2002, would agree with me that a person |
| 11:22:45 | 19 | of ordinary skill in the art knew that generally azides |
| 11:22:49 | 20 | were fairly non-reactive? |
| 11:22:54 | 21 | A. "Non-reactive" is a relative term. In certain |
| 11:23:01 | 22 | environments, they are certainly very reactive. In a |
| 11:23:04 | 23 | lot of environments, they're not. So I think that's |
| 11:23:06 | 24 | what you're implying there, that people understood that |
| 11:23:08 | 25 | in a lot of environments, they were not reactive. |

| 11:23:08 | 1 | That's certainly not to say they're not |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:23:11 | 2 | reactive in some. I mean the very essence of the |
| 11:23:13 | 3 | deprotection mechanism that we're talking about today |
| 11:23:16 | 4 | relies on their high reactivity, but certainly in a lot |
| 11:23:19 | 5 | of cases, people understood azides were stable. |
| 11:23:23 | 6 | Q. Do you know whether the carbon of a ketone or |
| 11:23:27 | 7 | carbonyl group is more reactive with nucleophiles of a |
| 11:23:32 | 8 | polymerase than the site central nitrogen of an azido |
| 11:23:36 | 9 | group? |
| 11:23:38 | 10 | A. No, I do not know that. |
| 11:23:39 | 11 | Again, what I know and if I can rephrase the |
| 11:23:41 | 12 | question in a way that I can answer well, let me give |
| 11:23:44 | 13 | you the answer to a slightly different question. |
| 11:23:46 | 14 | In general, outside of an enzyme, your |
| 11:23:49 | 15 | statement would be correct. Carbonyl groups would tend |
| 11:23:53 | 16 | of better electrophiles than that central nitrogen of an |
| 11:23:56 | 17 | azide; but, again, enzymes are a different game. |
| 11:24:00 | 18 | Enzymes the very act of the very fact of |
| 11:24:02 | 19 | what enzymes do, enzymes evolve to catalyze reaction. |
| 11:24:06 | 20 | That means they take a reaction that doesn't go |
| 11:24:08 | 21 | otherwise, and they make it happen. |
| 11:24:12 | 22 | So if someone said to me, Would you expect a |
| 11:24:15 | 23 | carbonyl of an ester to be more electrophilic than an |
| 11:24:20 | 24 | azide in general, I would say, Yeah, that's what I would |
| 11:24:24 | 25 | expect. |

| 11:24:25 | 1 | Alternatively, if they said, Would it surprise |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:24:27 | 2 | you that an enzyme went after the central position of an |
| 11:24:31 | 3 | azide with a nucleophile as efficiently as it did an |
| 11:24:34 | 4 | ester, would that surprise me? I would say, Not |
| 11:24:37 | 5 | particularly. This is enzymes are this is the |
| 11:24:40 | 6 | kind of thing enzymes do. |
| 11:24:44 | 7 | Q. Other than the statement in Canard that you |
| 11:24:48 | 8 | that you quote in your your declaration, as of 2002, |
| 11:25:01 | 9 | do you know of any other evidence that a nucleophile in |
| 11:25:05 | 10 | a polymerase would react with an azido group? |
| 11:25:13 | 11 | A. No, I don't I do not know of any report of |
| 11:25:15 | 12 | that. |
| 11:25:16 | 13 | Q. Canard doesn't present any evidence to that, |
| 11:25:19 | 14 | correct? |
| 11:25:20 | 15 | A. No. He suggests it, but he does not present |
| 11:25:22 | 16 | evidence. |
| 11:25:26 | 17 | Well, the evidence that he presents is very |
| 11:25:28 | 18 | tangential, and he I think he probably knew that. |
| 11:25:31 | 19 | He's saying that, interestingly, AZT is metabolized into |
| 11:25:36 | 20 | a 3' amino group, and that would suggest that does |
| 11:25:40 | 21 | suggest that's consistent with his mechanism. |
| 11:25:43 | 22 | Is that the only thing that's consistent with |
| 11:25:45 | 23 | his mechanism? Maybe not, but the reason he's pointing |
| 11:25:50 | 24 | that out is exactly this: He's trying to come up with |
| 11:25:54 | 25 | more data. |

| 11:25:55 | 1 | So other than those two statements, no, I'm |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:25:57 | 2 | unaware of any other examples. |
| 11:26:00 | 3 | Q. You would agree with me that Canard doesn't |
| 11:26:03 | 4 | present any data showing that a nucleophile in a |
| 11:26:06 | 5 | polymerase actually reacts with an azido group? |
| 11:26:09 | 6 | A. I believe that's correct. I would have to read |
| 11:26:11 | 7 | through this to make sure that's correct. I believe |
| 11:26:13 | 8 | that's correct. |
| 11:26:14 | 9 | Q. Now, in that sentence that you quote in your |
| 11:26:18 | 10 | declaration, it cites to two references, 29 and 30. |
| 11:26:28 | 11 | Do you see that in that if you look in |
| 11:26:31 | 12 | Canard remember that sentence that we were just |
| 11:26:33 | 13 | talking about in Canard? |
| 11:26:35 | 14 | A. Oh, that references 29 and 30 in Canard? |
| 11:26:39 | 15 | Q. Right. Did you review those references, 29 and |
| 11:26:43 | 16 | 30 of Canard? |
| 11:26:55 | 17 | A. I don't think so. I looked at a lot of papers. |
| 11:26:59 | 18 | I don't think those were two of them. I don't recognize |
| 11:27:02 | 19 | them. |
| 11:27:29 | 20 | Q. Why don't we turn to let's turn to paragraph |
| 11:27:40 | 21 | 32 of your declaration. Again, that's Exhibit 2011. |
| 11:27:50 | 22 | Now, in this paragraph, you suggest that Ju's |
| 11:27:52 | 23 | desired read length is more than 30 base pairs. |
| 11:27:57 | 24 | Is that correct? |
| 11:27:58 | 25 | A. That was my reading, yes. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 11:28:01 | 1 | Q. Now, the Ju reference itself, or the Ju patent, |
| 11:28:05 | 2 | does not provide any data showing 30 base pair reads, |
| 11:28:10 | 3 | correct? |
| 11:28:11 | 4 | A. No, it does not, so that part is correct. |
| 11:28:17 | 5 | Q. Would you agree with me that a person of |
| 11:28:19 | 6 | ordinary skill would understand any alleged 30 base pair |
| 11:28:26 | 7 | requirement as a goal? |
| 11:28:30 | 8 | A. I think my reading was that Ju had a much |
| 11:28:34 | 9 | longer a goal of being much longer than 30 |
| 11:28:38 | 10 | nucleotides. |
| 11:28:39 | 11 | Q. Right. But the Ju patent itself doesn't |
| 11:28:41 | 12 | provide any data that actually shows a 30 base pair |
| 11:28:45 | 13 | read, right? |
| 11:28:46 | 14 | A. No. He has no such data, no. |
| 11:28:48 | 15 | Q. Right. So would you agree with me that a |
| 11:28:50 | 16 | person of ordinary skill reading the Ju reference in |
| 11:28:54 | 17 | 2002 would understand that as a goal, correct? |
| 11:28:57 | 18 | MS. SWAROOP: Object objection. Asked and |
| 11:28:58 | 19 | answered. |
| 11:29:00 | 20 | THE WITNESS: I don't think Ju's goal was to |
| 11:29:02 | 21 | sequence 30 nucleotides; I think Ju's goal was to |
| 11:29:05 | 22 | sequence significantly longer. |
| 11:29:07 | 23 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:29:08 | 24 | Q. Okay. But they're both goals to the extent |
| 11:29:09 | 25 | they're in the Ju reference? |

| 11:29:12 | 1 | A. I don't read it as 30 nucleotides being a goal |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:29:15 | 2 | of Ju. He actually cites a pyrosequencing method, and |
| 11:29:20 | 3 | he cites the 30 nucleotides as a limitation the fact |
| 11:29:24 | 4 | that you can only get a read length of 30 as a |
| 11:29:28 | 5 | limitation. So I think he's it's sort of it's |
| 11:29:30 | 6 | noted as a limitation, and he then at a later at a |
| 11:29:35 | 7 | different spot, talks about much longer reads. |
| 11:29:37 | 8 | So my read, I don't think he actually gives a |
| 11:29:40 | 9 | value of what he says is his goal, but it was |
| 11:29:42 | 10 | clearly long in my read of it, it was clearly longer |
| 11:29:45 | 11 | than 30 because he's disparaging the pyrosequencing |
| 11:29:49 | 12 | method as only providing 30 nucleotide read lengths. |
| 11:29:53 | 13 | Q. Now, a person with ordinary skill in the art to |
| 11:29:57 | 14 | reach a 30 base pair read or longer would understand |
| 11:30:00 | 15 | that you would need to test various protecting groups, |
| 11:30:04 | 16 | correct? |
| 11:30:04 | 17 | A. Sure. Yes. |
| 11:30:06 | 18 | Q. And you'd also have to test the protecting |
| 11:30:08 | 19 | groups that are attached to nucleotides; you'd also have |
| 11:30:12 | 20 | to test polymerases, correct? |
| 11:30:15 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:30:16 | 22 | question. |
| 11:30:17 | 23 | THE WITNESS: I think by definition, yes. |
| 11:30:19 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:30:19 | 25 | Q. And you would also have to test various |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|
| 11:30:23 | 1 | cleaving conditions, correct? |
| 11:30:28 | 2 | A. The efficiency, yeah; and the time, sure. |
| 11:30:31 | 3 | Q. And Ju, in fact, teaches that various, for |
| 11:30:35 | 4 | instance, polymerases can be used, correct? |
| 11:30:41 | 5 | A. I I'm not sure I understand the question. |
| 11:30:43 | 6 | He teaches I think he suggests. |
| 11:30:46 | 7 | Does he demonstrate? Is that what you're |
| 11:30:48 | 8 | asking? Or |
| 11:30:49 | 9 | Q. Well, I'm asking whether Ju teaches that |
| 11:30:51 | 10 | different polymerases can be used in an SBS method. |
| 11:30:55 | 11 | A. So could you spec could you use a word |
| 11:30:57 | 12 | other than "teaches" in that question? |
| 11:31:00 | 13 | Q. "Disclose" in there, the use of different |
| 11:31:04 | 14 | polymerases |
| 11:31:05 | 15 | A. I don't believe he has there's no data, if |
| 11:31:08 | 16 | that's what you're asking. He doesn't demonstrate. |
| 11:31:11 | 17 | Does he say that they could be? I think so. |
| 11:31:20 | 18 | And the reason I'm qualifying that is I think that |
| 11:31:22 | 19 | "disclose" and "teach" have certain meanings. |
| 11:31:26 | 20 | Q. Okay. How about does Ju suggest the use |
| 11:31:29 | 21 | A. Yes. |
| | | |

11:31:31 23 Α. Yes.

And, again, to achieve this 30 base pair read 11:31:35 24 Ο. 11:31:39 25 or longer, a person of ordinary skill in the art would

Q. -- of different polymerases?

11:31:29 22

| 11:31:42 | 1 | understand that you might need to optimize various |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:31:45 | 2 | conditions of Ju's SBS method; is that right? |
| 11:31:52 | 3 | A. To the extent that any parameter doesn't |
| 11:31:55 | 4 | satisfy what he defines as a criteria, if you are going |
| 11:31:59 | 5 | to pursue the method then, by definition, you would have |
| 11:32:02 | 6 | to optimize it. |
| 11:32:18 | 7 | Q. Let's turn to paragraph 33 of your declaration. |
| 11:32:31 | 8 | Is it your position that for Ju's method, a |
| 11:32:37 | 9 | person of ordinary skill in the art would understand |
| 11:32:39 | 10 | that you would need a protecting group that could be |
| 11:32:42 | 11 | removed in nearly quantitative yield? |
| 11:32:48 | 12 | A. Yes. |
| 11:32:53 | 13 | Q. Now, before a person of ordinary skill in the |
| 11:32:56 | 14 | art back in 2002, reading Ju's method before such a |
| 11:33:02 | 15 | person would try a protecting group in Ju's method, |
| 11:33:07 | 16 | would they need data showing the removal of the |
| 11:33:11 | 17 | protecting group with nearly quantitative yield? |
| 11:33:15 | 18 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:33:16 | 19 | question. |
| 11:33:17 | 20 | THE WITNESS: I guess it depends on what level |
| 11:33:20 | 21 | of expectation you're asking. |
| 11:33:22 | 22 | Are you asking if someone expected to be able |
| 11:33:25 | 23 | to use Ju's method with this protecting group? They |
| 11:33:30 | 24 | would if you I mean it's a confidence question. |
| 11:33:34 | 25 | If you're saying that I have zero confidence and I'm |

| 11:33:37 | 1 | just going to try different things then, sure, you could |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:33:40 | 2 | try anything and you would need no data. |
| 11:33:43 | 3 | If you're going into it with an expectation of |
| 11:33:46 | 4 | success, then then I would need data, and I guess the |
| 11:33:51 | 5 | way I would think about it is you know, I run a |
| 11:33:53 | 6 | research group with a limited amount of money, so you |
| 11:33:56 | 7 | make choices that have opportunity costs. I I can |
| 11:34:01 | 8 | pay students to work on one thing, or I can pay students |
| 11:34:04 | 9 | to work on another. |
| 11:34:05 | 10 | If I were, in 2002, thinking about doing this, |
| 11:34:08 | 11 | I would have needed data that would have convinced me |
| 11:34:12 | 12 | that it wasn't a waste of my time and my students' time |
| 11:34:15 | 13 | and my money. |
| 11:34:16 | 14 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:34:17 | 15 | Q. So for a reasonable expectation of success, |
| 11:34:19 | 16 | would a person of ordinary skill in the art need data |
| 11:34:24 | 17 | showing that the protecting group can be removed with |
| 11:34:26 | 18 | nearly quantitative yield? |
| 11:34:28 | 19 | A. It depends on what you mean by "reasonable." I |
| 11:34:31 | 20 | mean, again, it's a level of confidence. It depends. |
| 11:34:35 | 21 | If there's data in the literature that suggests |
| 11:34:38 | 22 | they're inefficient, then I would need a lot of |
| 11:34:42 | 23 | convincing to change my mind. |
| 11:34:44 | 24 | If there was no data and it were easy to test, |
| 11:34:48 | 25 | I mean, again, it all comes down to just what level of |

| 11:34:51 | 1 | confidence you want to have, what level of expectation |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:34:54 | 2 | of success you're asking. |
| 11:34:56 | 3 | Again, if you have zero expectation of success, |
| 11:35:00 | 4 | then I don't think you would need any data. |
| 11:35:02 | 5 | Am I being clear? |
| 11:35:06 | 6 | Q. Well, for again, for a reasonable |
| 11:35:08 | 7 | expectation of success let's ask it a different way. |
| 11:35:12 | 8 | What yield would motivate a person of ordinary |
| 11:35:15 | 9 | skill in the art to try a protecting group with Ju's |
| 11:35:19 | 10 | method? |
| 11:35:22 | 11 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:35:23 | 12 | question. |
| 11:35:23 | 13 | THE WITNESS: So okay. So that's a hard |
| 11:35:25 | 14 | question. |
| 11:35:26 | 15 | Are you asking if I saw a particular reaction, |
| 11:35:29 | 16 | would I how prone would I be to think, yeah, that |
| 11:35:34 | 17 | could be used the protecting group and its removal by |
| 11:35:38 | 18 | that method could be used in Ju's method? Is that what |
| 11:35:44 | 19 | you're asking? |
| 11:35:45 | 20 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:35:45 | 21 | Q. Yes. |
| 11:35:46 | 22 | A. So it depends on what that data is. If that |
| 11:35:49 | 23 | data looks like you're getting 10 percent yields and |
| 11:35:52 | 24 | people have worked on it a fair bit, then I'd say, Boy, |
| 11:35:56 | 25 | there's very little chance to optimize it. |

| 11:35:59 | 1 | Then I would be very suspicious. I would have |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:36:02 | 2 | a very low level of confidence. |
| 11:36:04 | 3 | If you were looking at a completely new |
| 11:36:06 | 4 | reaction that had never been examined and my intuition |
| 11:36:09 | 5 | was that, you know, hey, maybe that would work and it |
| 11:36:11 | 6 | wasn't hard, maybe I would test it. So it really |
| 11:36:14 | 7 | depends on what confidence you have of the data that |
| 11:36:17 | 8 | exists and how good that data is, because if there's |
| 11:36:21 | 9 | very little data there and maybe you're hopeful that |
| 11:36:23 | 10 | there could be optimization. If there's a lot of data |
| 11:36:27 | 11 | there from a lot of different groups and they're getting |
| 11:36:30 | 12 | 10 percent, then I would have very little data that you |
| 11:36:33 | 13 | could I would have very little belief that you could |
| 11:36:35 | 14 | optimize it. |
| 11:36:36 | 15 | Q. How about if the prior art showed yields of |
| 11:36:40 | 16 | 80 percent? |
| 11:36:44 | 17 | A. Consistently under different conditions from |
| 11:36:46 | 18 | different groups? So, again, is that how solid does |
| 11:36:50 | 19 | that 80 percent look? |
| 11:36:53 | 20 | If it looks solid, then it's a there's no |
| 11:36:57 | 21 | pursual there; there's no chance that's going to work if |
| 11:37:01 | 22 | that's the solid if that's a solid number. |
| 11:37:07 | 23 | Frankly, if it's a |
| 11:37:08 | 24 | Q. Again, what do you mean by "solid"? |
| 11:37:10 | 25 | A. It depends on how much optimism that I have |

| 11:37:13 | 1 | that I could improve it, and what that means is what are |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:37:16 | 2 | the conditions that had been examined? Depending on the |
| 11:37:20 | 3 | reaction, how much flexibility is there to optimize it? |
| 11:37:24 | 4 | If you are in a very constrained reaction and |
| 11:37:27 | 5 | there's only one way you can do it, and there's reliable |
| 11:37:31 | 6 | data that shows that gives you an 80 percent yield, I'm |
| 11:37:35 | 7 | looking for another project. |
| 11:37:37 | 8 | Q. But would you look for others other research |
| 11:37:40 | 9 | groups that tried to remove that particular protecting |
| 11:37:44 | 10 | group? |
| 11:37:44 | 11 | A. Sure. That would be an important piece of the |
| 11:37:46 | 12 | data, because if there were just one report and they |
| 11:37:49 | 13 | report this you know, there's a lot of errors in |
| 11:37:52 | 14 | science, and so I would be suspicious that it could be |
| 11:37:55 | 15 | an error. |
| 11:37:55 | 16 | So if someone reported some quantitative yield |
| 11:37:59 | 17 | of something that looked too good to be true and no one |
| 11:38:04 | 18 | had actually even explored it, I would be pretty |
| 11:38:06 | 19 | suspicious of that. |
| 11:38:07 | 20 | Someone in contrast, if three or four or |
| 11:38:10 | 21 | five respectable groups report something and they're all |
| 11:38:14 | 22 | giving 80 percent, 85 percent, then that's the opposite: |
| 11:38:18 | 23 | I'm done. |
| 11:38:19 | 24 | That's what I mean by there being good data, so |
| 11:38:22 | 25 | it all depends on the level of optimization that you |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 11:38:25 | 1 | think is possible. |
| 11:38:26 | 2 | If there's a lot of groups that tried and can't |
| 11:38:30 | 3 | do it, then you're probably not going to be able to do |
| 11:38:33 | 4 | it. |
| 11:38:34 | 5 | Q. So you would look for other groups that have |
| 11:38:36 | 6 | tried to remove a particular protecting group before |
| 11:38:38 | 7 | ruling it in or ruling it out? |
| 11:38:41 | 8 | A. That would not be the you know, that would |
| 11:38:43 | 9 | not be the gating criteria, but I would weigh that into |
| 11:38:46 | 10 | a consideration. |
| 11:38:48 | 11 | But, again, it depends on the specific |
| 11:38:51 | 12 | situation, so you're going to have to tell me a fact |
| 11:38:54 | 13 | pattern, and I'll tell you whether I would consider that |
| 11:38:57 | 14 | promising or not. |
| 11:39:04 | 15 | Q. What conditions could affect the removal |
| 11:39:08 | 16 | efficiency of a 3' protecting group? |
| 11:39:12 | 17 | A. What removal conditions? |
| 11:39:14 | 18 | The reagents that are used, the temperature, |
| 11:39:18 | 19 | the solvent, the efficiency, because if you can if |
| 11:39:28 | 20 | you have to take it for a long time, it's likely that |
| 11:39:30 | 21 | competing side reactions might be there. |
| 11:39:35 | 22 | Q. PH? |
| 11:39:36 | 23 | A. Sure. |
| 11:39:39 | 24 | Q. How about the concentration of the reagents? |
| 11:39:42 | 25 | A. The concentration required; sure, that could |

| 11:39:47 | 1 | affect things. | | |
|----------|----|--|--|--|
| 11:40:00 | 2 | Q. Let's turn to paragraph 34 of your declaration, | | |
| 11:40:04 | 3 | Exhibit 2011. | | |
| 11:40:13 | 4 | Is it your position that a person of ordinary | | |
| 11:40:16 | 5 | skill in the art would understand Ju's method requires | | |
| 11:40:19 | 6 | rapid removal conditions for 3' hydroxyl protecting | | |
| 11:40:23 | 7 | groups? | | |
| 11:40:28 | 8 | A. Given the qualitativeness of that term "rapid," | | |
| 11:40:33 | 9 | yes. | | |
| 11:40:34 | 10 | Q. Let me ask you about that term, "rapid." | | |
| 11:40:37 | 11 | Does Ju define what "rapid" is? | | |
| 11:40:41 | 12 | A. Not explicitly; but implicitly, he does. He | | |
| 11:40:46 | 13 | describes "efficient," and he's describing a | | |
| 11:40:49 | 14 | sequencing-by-synthesis method, so I think that anyone | | |
| 11:40:53 | 15 | thinking about his method would understand that that | | |
| 11:40:55 | 16 | brings with it certain constraints. | | |
| 11:41:01 | 17 | Q. So, again, that would be the ultimate goal of a | | |
| 11:41:04 | 18 | researcher working in sequencing-by-synthesis methods? | | |
| 11:41:08 | 19 | A. Yes. | | |
| 11:41:09 | 20 | Q. But the first step is not necessarily you're | | |
| 11:41:12 | 21 | going to be worrying about extremely rapid process; | | |
| 11:41:16 | 22 | would you agree with that? | | |
| 11:41:18 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the | | |
| 11:41:19 | 24 | question. | | |
| 11:41:21 | 25 | THE WITNESS: Yes and no. I agree with it to | | |

| 11:41:23 | 1 | the extent that I think it's a valid thing to do to |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:41:27 | 2 | explore one thing and hope to optimize another aspect of |
| 11:41:32 | 3 | it later, but you will also understand that that aspect |
| 11:41:37 | 4 | will eventually have to be optimized, and so you would, |
| 11:41:41 | 5 | at best, ignore it with the optimization with the |
| 11:41:48 | 6 | optimism that you could eventually fix it. |
| 11:41:51 | 7 | If you're working with something that will |
| 11:41:53 | 8 | never cleave faster than I don't know; I'm just going |
| 11:41:57 | 9 | to make up a number five hours, six hours, you're |
| 11:42:00 | 10 | done. I mean, no one will ever sequence anything |
| 11:42:03 | 11 | significant waiting six hours between reads. |
| 11:42:07 | 12 | So if you have zero optimism that you could |
| 11:42:10 | 13 | ever deal with that, then you'd be a fool to try to |
| 11:42:14 | 14 | develop other aspects of it. You're going to get a |
| 11:42:18 | 15 | nice-looking car that can't drive. |
| 11:42:27 | 16 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:42:28 | 17 | Q. So would you agree that the strike that. |
| 11:42:32 | 18 | Would you agree that how rapid the removal of |
| 11:42:34 | 19 | the 3' protecting group is related to the application |
| 11:42:39 | 20 | that you're going to use the SBS method for? |
| 11:42:43 | 21 | A. Could you repeat that question. |
| 11:42:46 | 22 | Q. Does the rapid removal of a 3' protecting group |
| 11:42:52 | 23 | relate to the eventual application of the SBS method? |
| 11:42:57 | 24 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:42:58 | 25 | question. |

| 11:42:59 | 1 | THE WITNESS: So are you asking if the |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:43:01 | 2 | efficiency of removal depends required, depends on |
| 11:43:06 | 3 | the application? |
| 11:43:08 | 4 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:43:09 | 5 | Q. Sure. That's a better way of asking it. Thank |
| 11:43:11 | 6 | you. |
| 11:43:13 | 7 | A. So that depends I mean, so that depends. |
| 11:43:16 | 8 | Are you talking about sequencing-by-synthesis |
| 11:43:19 | 9 | applications? |
| 11:43:20 | 10 | Q. Yes. |
| 11:43:21 | 11 | A. Sure, but they all have to be efficient. |
| 11:43:23 | 12 | There's a minimum that you're going to have to be. |
| 11:43:26 | 13 | You're going to have to get 30 nucleotide read |
| 11:43:29 | 14 | lengths minimum, in a time that's not in a time |
| 11:43:33 | 15 | that's feasible. |
| 11:43:37 | 16 | Q. What's a feasible time? |
| 11:43:38 | 17 | A. You know, that's a relative term. I mean, I |
| 11:43:41 | 18 | it I threw out the idea of five hours being not |
| 11:43:47 | 19 | reasonable, and I think that's probably right. |
| 11:43:50 | 20 | What is a reasonable time? I don't know. An |
| 11:43:52 | 21 | hour. That would not be great, I don't think, but that |
| 11:43:55 | 22 | would at least maybe be in the realm of doable. |
| 11:43:59 | 23 | 10 hours you know, I mean, how long does it |
| 11:44:04 | 24 | take to drive to L.A. and what's acceptable? I mean it |
| 11:44:08 | 25 | depends on how much time you've got and depends on, you |

| 11:44:10 | 1 | know, what you know, two hours is better than 20. |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:44:15 | 2 | But what I will say is that there are lots of |
| 11:44:23 | 3 | polymerase reactions, there are lots of read lengths |
| 11:44:30 | 4 | that would simply never be useful for sequencing by |
| 11:44:33 | 5 | synthesis. |
| 11:44:34 | 6 | A read length of one is just an example. You |
| 11:44:37 | 7 | would never be able to do anything with that. So you're |
| 11:44:41 | 8 | going to have to get read lengths of 25 or 30 in in |
| 11:44:46 | 9 | a with no more than an hour or so between reads to |
| 11:44:52 | 10 | make it to someone who's reading the Ju material, |
| 11:44:58 | 11 | the Ju patent, and thinking about sequencing by |
| 11:45:01 | 12 | synthesis is going to understand those as restrictions. |
| 11:45:42 | 13 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to hand you what's been |
| 11:45:45 | 14 | previously marked as Exhibit 1008. It's a PCT published |
| 11:45:50 | 15 | patent application. The first named inventor is Roger |
| 11:45:58 | 16 | Tsien. That's spelled T-s-i-e-n. |
| 11:46:18 | 17 | (Exhibit 1008 was referred to.) |
| 11:46:20 | 18 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:46:21 | 19 | Q. I'd like to do with you what we did with the Ju |
| 11:46:24 | 20 | reference, and sort of compare what Tsien teaches or |
| 11:46:29 | 21 | suggests in his patent application as compared to the |
| 11:46:32 | 22 | claim language of the claims in the '537 patent, which |
| 11:46:38 | 23 | is Exhibit 1001, okay? |
| 11:46:44 | 24 | A. Yes. |
| 11:46:44 | 25 | Q. So, again, if we look at claim 1 and, again, |

| 11:46:52 | 1 | beginning on line 2 of claim 1 of the '537 patent, after | |
|----------|----|--|--|
| 11:46:56 | 2 | the word "comprising," in the second line it says | |
| 11:47:00 | 3 | "incorporating into the nucleic acid molecule a | |
| 11:47:07 | 4 | nucleotide or nucleoside molecule." | |
| 11:47:10 | 5 | You would agree with me that the Tsien | |
| 11:47:12 | 6 | reference discloses that? | |
| 11:47:15 | 7 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the | |
| 11:47:16 | 8 | question and object as outside the scope. | |
| 11:47:21 | 9 | THE WITNESS: Yes. | |
| 11:47:22 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: | |
| 11:47:24 | 11 | Q. Again, so the next part of the claim reads | |
| 11:47:26 | 12 | "wherein the nucleotide or nucleoside molecule has a | |
| 11:47:29 | 13 | base that is linked to a detectable label via a | |
| 11:47:33 | 14 | cleavable linker," again, the Tsien reference discloses | |
| 11:47:38 | 15 | this? | |
| 11:47:43 | 16 | A. I think so, yes. | |
| 11:47:55 | 17 | Q. Is that a "yes"? | |
| 11:47:56 | 18 | A. I believe so. It just | |
| 11:47:56 | 19 | MS. SWAROOP: While he's looking, let me object | |
| 11:47:58 | 20 | to the form of the question and also object as outside | |
| 11:48:01 | 21 | the scope. | |
| 11:48:07 | 22 | THE WITNESS: Could you show me in the Tsien | |
| 11:48:09 | 23 | reference where he states this? | |
| 11:48:12 | 24 | I believe it is correct, but I'm, again, mixing | |
| 11:48:16 | 25 | up so many things that I read that I just want to make | |

| 11:48:19 | 1 | sure that I don't make a mistake sitting here. |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:48:25 | 2 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:48:25 | 3 | Q. Okay. If you'll look on page 27 of the Tsien |
| 11:48:28 | 4 | reference |
| 11:48:29 | 5 | A. Which numbering system? Bottom or top of the |
| 11:48:32 | 6 | page? |
| 11:48:33 | 7 | Q. The top of the page. |
| 11:48:35 | 8 | A. Okay. |
| 11:48:42 | 9 | Q. If you'll look at the last paragraph it |
| 11:48:44 | 10 | begins around line 33 and read that on to page 28. |
| 11:49:06 | 11 | A. Yes, it would yes. |
| 11:49:07 | 12 | Q. Okay. Now, turning to the next part of claim 1 |
| 11:49:14 | 13 | of the '537 patent, the claim reads "the nucleotide or |
| 11:49:21 | 14 | nucleoside molecule has a ribose or deoxyribose sugar |
| 11:49:26 | 15 | moiety wherein the ribose or deoxyribose sugar moiety |
| 11:49:31 | 16 | comprises a protecting group attached via the 2' or 3' |
| 11:49:34 | 17 | oxygen atom." |
| 11:49:37 | 18 | Would you agree with me that Tsien discloses a |
| 11:49:41 | 19 | protecting group attached to the 3' oxygen? |
| 11:49:45 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me object to the form of the |
| 11:49:46 | 21 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 11:49:49 | 22 | THE WITNESS: Yes. |
| 11:49:50 | 23 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:49:53 | 24 | Q. The next part of claim 1 of the '537 patent |
| 11:49:56 | 25 | reads "said protecting group can be modified or removed |

| Deposition of Flo | yd Ro | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|-------|---|
| 11:50:01 | 1 | to expose a 3' hydroxyl group." |
| 11:50:06 | 2 | Would you agree with me that Tsien discloses |
| 11:50:09 | 3 | removing the 3' protecting group to expose a 3' hydroxyl |
| 11:50:14 | 4 | group? |
| 11:50:14 | 5 | A. Yes. |
| 11:50:20 | 6 | Q. The next part of the claim reads "the |
| 11:50:22 | 7 | protecting group comprises an azido group." |
| 11:50:26 | 8 | Now, would you agree with me that Tsien teaches |
| 11:50:29 | 9 | using an N3 group as a blocking modification to the 3' |
| 11:50:35 | 10 | hydroxyl position of dNTPs? |
| 11:50:42 | 11 | A. No. |
| 11:50:43 | 12 | Q. That's actually a quote from Tsien. |
| 11:50:47 | 13 | If you'll turn the page, using, again, the page |
| 11:50:51 | 14 | numbers at the top, page 21, if you look beginning on |
| 11:51:09 | 15 | line 19, it reads the text of Tsien reads "Other |
| 11:51:14 | 16 | blocking modifications to the 3'-OH position of dNTPs |
| 11:51:20 | 17 | include the introduction of groups such as" I'm not |
| 11:51:24 | 18 | going to read all the groups in, but the N3 group is |
| 11:51:27 | 19 | there, correct? |
| 11:51:28 | 20 | A. That is what's written there. |
| 11:51:33 | 21 | Q. So you would agree with me that Tsien, at |
| 11:51:36 | 22 | least, suggests that an N3 group, otherwise known as an |
| 11:51:42 | 23 | azido group, would be incorporated by polymerase? |
| 11:51:45 | 24 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:51:46 | 25 | question. |

| 11:51:47 | 1 | THE WITNESS: As a reversible terminator? | |
|----------|----|--|--|
| 11:51:50 | 2 | So you're mixing two questions here, because | |
| 11:51:53 | 3 | the question that you were just talking about was as a | |
| 11:51:55 | 4 | blocking a removable blocking group, or so are you | |
| 11:52:01 | 5 | asking me that, or are you asking me if azido group | |
| 11:52:05 | 6 | modifications can still be accommodated with | |
| 11:52:08 | 7 | by polymerase? So those are two separate questions. | |
| 11:52:12 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: | |
| 11:52:12 | 9 | Q. Let's start with that last question. | |
| 11:52:14 | 10 | A. So Tsien is evoking data that shows that a | |
| 11:52:17 | 11 | variety of groups attach to the 3' position; a carbon, | |
| 11:52:20 | 12 | and these are not these are well-known examples, all | |
| 11:52:24 | 13 | of them, and he sites Kraevskii | |
| 11:52:29 | 14 | Q. Now, would you agree with me | |
| 11:52:30 | 15 | A and azido was one of them. | |
| 11:52:32 | 16 | Q. Sorry. | |
| 11:52:32 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, let him finish his | |
| 11:52:36 | 18 | THE WITNESS: And azido was one of those. | |
| 11:52:37 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: | |
| 11:52:38 | 20 | Q. Okay. Are you finished? | |
| 11:52:39 | 21 | A. Yes. | |
| 11:52:39 | 22 | Q. Okay. Would you agree with me that Tsien does | |
| 11:52:41 | 23 | not teach that the N3 group could not be part of a | |
| 11:52:45 | 24 | chemical moiety attached to a 3' oxygen? | |
| 11:52:49 | 25 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the | |

| 11:52:50 | 1 | question. | | | |
|----------|----|--|--|--|--|
| 11:52:52 | 2 | THE WITNESS: He doesn't address it. So to the | | | |
| 11:52:58 | 3 | extent that's teaching or not teaching, he doesn't | | | |
| 11:53:01 | 4 | address it. | | | |
| 11:53:03 | 5 | Incidentally, it couldn't be. It's chemical | | | |
| 11:53:07 | 6 | nonsense to attach an azide to a oxygen directly, I | | | |
| 11:53:11 | 7 | believe. I don't think that would be a viable molecule. | | | |
| 11:53:14 | 8 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | | |
| 11:53:14 | 9 | Q. But Tsien doesn't teach that the N3 group | | | |
| 11:53:17 | 10 | couldn't be part of a protecting group and be attached | | | |
| 11:53:20 | 11 | to a 3' oxygen? | | | |
| 11:53:21 | 12 | A. Sure, but he doesn't he does not teach that | | | |
| 11:53:23 | 13 | it could not be, but he doesn't teach that it could be. | | | |
| 11:53:26 | 14 | He doesn't breach he doesn't address the subject. | | | |
| 11:53:31 | 15 | Q. Turning to claim 2 of the '537 patent, reads | | | |
| 11:53:38 | 16 | "The method of claim 1, wherein said incorporating is | | | |
| 11:53:41 | 17 | accomplished via a terminal transferase, a polymerase or | | | |
| 11:53:46 | 18 | a reverse transcriptase." | | | |
| 11:53:48 | 19 | Do you see that? | | | |
| 11:53:49 | 20 | A. Yes, I do. | | | |
| 11:53:51 | 21 | Q. Tsien discloses using a polymerase to | | | |
| 11:53:53 | 22 | incorporate a nucleotide in his SBS methods? | | | |
| 11:53:57 | 23 | A. Yes. | | | |
| 11:53:58 | 24 | Q. Turning to claim 3 of the '537 patent, "The | | | |
| 11:54:03 | 25 | method of claim 1, wherein the base is a deazapurine," | | | |

| 11:54:11 | 1 | would you agree that Tsien teaches through the |
|--|--|--|
| 11:54:15 | 2 | incorporation of the Prober reference using a |
| 11:54:18 | 3 | deazapurine base? |
| 11:54:19 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:54:21 | 5 | question and object outside the scope. |
| 11:54:23 | 6 | THE WITNESS: Could you show me that? Because |
| 11:54:24 | 7 | having read the Tsien patent recently, it's mostly about |
| 11:54:29 | 8 | not about analogues without that modification. |
| 11:54:32 | 9 | But show me expressly I mean I'm aware of |
| 11:54:35 | 10 | the Prober reference that does describe the diaza |
| 11:54:39 | 11 | analogue, so if you could just refresh my memory quickly |
| 11:54:42 | 12 | to make sure that it is the Tsien PCT that's describing |
| 11:54:46 | 13 | that. |
| | | |
| 11:54:47 | 14 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 | 14 15 | BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:54:49 | 14 15 16 | BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:54:49 11:55:01 | 14 15 16 17 | BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:54:49 11:55:01 11:55:13 | 14 15 16 17 18 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:19 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags."</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:19 11:55:22 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags." Do you see that sentence?</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:19 11:55:22 11:55:23 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags." Do you see that sentence? A. I do.</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:19 11:55:22 11:55:23 11:55:23 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags." Do you see that sentence? A. I do. Q. So would you agree with me that Tsien teaches,</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:19 11:55:22 11:55:23 11:55:23 11:55:23 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags." Do you see that sentence? A. I do. Q. So would you agree with me that Tsien teaches, through incorporation of Prober, the use of deazapurine</pre> |
| 11:54:47 11:54:47 11:55:01 11:55:13 11:55:22 11:55:23 11:55:23 11:55:26 11:55:30 | 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 | <pre>BY MR. SEGAL: Q. If you look on again, using the numbers at the top of Tsien page 29 the sentence that begins on line 12, "One quite versatile scheme is based on an approach used by Prober, et al. (1987) to prepare ddNTPs with fluorescent tags." Do you see that sentence? A. I do. Q. So would you agree with me that Tsien teaches, through incorporation of Prober, the use of deazapurine bases?</pre> |

| 11:55:32 | 1 | question. Object as outside the scope. | | | |
|----------|----|---|--|--|--|
| 11:55:40 | 2 | THE WITNESS: I'm a little confused, because | | | |
| 11:55:41 | 3 | then he then references molecules A through D, and none | | | |
| 11:55:45 | 4 | of them are the diazas as he shows them. They're all | | | |
| 11:55:53 | 5 | attached at the C-8 position, and what he's talking | | | |
| 11:55:55 | 6 | about is the C-8 position. | | | |
| 11:55:58 | 7 | "The approach can be used to prepare | | | |
| 11:56:01 | 8 | the" "A number of" | | | |
| 11:56:16 | 9 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | | |
| 11:56:17 | 10 | Q. Does he suggest let me ask a different | | | |
| 11:56:19 | 11 | question. | | | |
| 11:56:20 | 12 | Does Tsien suggest that you could use the | | | |
| 11:56:24 | 13 | attachment mechanism disclosed in Prober for his | | | |
| 11:56:29 | 14 | nucleotides? | | | |
| 11:56:31 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Again, I just want to object as | | | |
| 11:56:32 | 16 | outside the scope. | | | |
| 11:56:34 | 17 | THE WITNESS: I would need to think about that, | | | |
| 11:56:35 | 18 | because from my reading right here, what he's saying is | | | |
| 11:56:40 | 19 | that a number of approaches are possible to produce | | | |
| 11:56:43 | 20 | fluorescent derivatives. | | | |
| 11:56:45 | 21 | One versatile element is that taught by Prober. | | | |
| 11:56:48 | 22 | Prober is deazapurines, so that would seem to imply | | | |
| 11:56:54 | 23 | that, yes. | | | |
| 11:57:05 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: | | | |
| 11:57:05 | 25 | Q. Turn to claim 4 of the '537 patent. It reads | | | |

| Deposition | of Floyd R | Romesberg, Ph.D. |
|------------|------------|------------------|
| | | 0 |

| 11:57:09 | 1 | "The method of claim 1, wherein the nucleotide is a |
|----------|----|---|
| 11:57:12 | 2 | deoxyribonucleotide triphosphate." |
| 11:57:15 | 3 | You would agree with me that Tsien discloses |
| 11:57:18 | 4 | such a molecule? |
| 11:57:20 | 5 | A. Yes. |
| 11:57:20 | 6 | Q. And he discloses it for use in his sequencing |
| 11:57:23 | 7 | methods? |
| 11:57:25 | 8 | A. Yes. |
| 11:57:26 | 9 | Q. If you look at claim 5 of the '537 patent, |
| 11:57:31 | 10 | claim 5 reads "The method of claim 1, wherein the label |
| 11:57:35 | 11 | is a fluorophore." |
| 11:57:39 | 12 | Again, would you agree with me that Tsien |
| 11:57:41 | 13 | discloses using fluorophores as a label on its |
| 11:57:46 | 14 | nucleotides for use in his sequencing methods? |
| 11:57:49 | 15 | A. Yes. |
| 11:57:50 | 16 | I'm I apologize. Can we revisit the |
| 11:57:53 | 17 | question of the deazapurines? |
| 11:57:57 | 18 | I apologize for not knowing this, but my |
| 11:58:01 | 19 | reading is it's very unclear, because he says that he's |
| 11:58:06 | 20 | talking about the C-8 position of purines, and that is |
| 11:58:11 | 21 | not a deazapurine; that's the other way to do it. |
| 11:58:15 | 22 | And then he starts talking about pyrimidines, |
| 11:58:17 | 23 | and that's C and T. That's not a purine, so that's not |
| 11:58:22 | 24 | a case for a deaza. And it's there that he says |
| 11:58:25 | 25 | immediately following that, he says you can use the |

| 11:58:27 | 1 | Prober technique to prepare fluorescent tags, so if he's |
|----------|----|--|
| 11:58:31 | 2 | talking about in general everything that he just spoke, |
| 11:58:35 | 3 | purines and pyrimidines, then that would seem to include |
| 11:58:37 | 4 | the deazapurines. But if he's only talking about the |
| 11:58:41 | 5 | pyrimidines, Prober contains the methods for the |
| 11:58:44 | 6 | synthesis of the pyrimidines that don't use, obviously, |
| 11:58:48 | 7 | the deazapurine. |
| 11:58:49 | 8 | So and all the compounds that he lists |
| 11:58:51 | 9 | are he lists lots of purines, and none of them are |
| 11:58:56 | 10 | deazapurines; they're all regular purines. So I would |
| 11:59:00 | 11 | need a little time to and I would need a little time |
| 11:59:02 | 12 | to read this through to make sure that I agree with that |
| 11:59:06 | 13 | statement. |
| 11:59:09 | 14 | Q. Okay. I mean we can move on. |
| 11:59:12 | 15 | Claim 8 reads "The method according to claim 1, |
| 11:59:18 | 16 | further comprising detecting the detectable label and |
| 11:59:21 | 17 | cleaving the cleavable linker." |
| 11:59:24 | 18 | Would you agree with me that Tsien discloses |
| 11:59:27 | 19 | that step in his sequencing methods? |
| 11:59:31 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 11:59:32 | 21 | question. Object as outside the scope. |
| 11:59:36 | 22 | THE WITNESS: Yes. |
| 11:59:59 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: I think I'm about to enter a new |
| 12:00:01 | 24 | line of questioning. I think our lunch just came. I |
| 12:00:03 | 25 | think this would probably be a good time to break. |
| 12:00:07 | 1 | MS. SWAROOP: Fine. |
|----------|----|--|
| 12:00:08 | 2 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Okay. We are going off |
| 12:00:09 | 3 | the record. The time is 12:00 o'clock. |
| 12:00:14 | 4 | (Luncheon recess was taken at 12:00 p.m.) |
| 12:00:14 | 5 | * * * |
| 12:00:13 | 6 | San Diego, California July 8, 2014 1:02 p.m. |
| 13:02:00 | 7 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are back on the record. |
| 13:02:01 | 8 | This is the beginning of Disk No. 3. The time is 1:02. |
| 13:02:05 | 9 | |
| 13:02:05 | 10 | CONTINUED EXAMINATION |
| 13:02:06 | 11 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:02:06 | 12 | Q. Now, Dr. Romesberg, if you'll take out your |
| 13:02:09 | 13 | declaration again. It's Exhibit 2011. If you'll turn |
| 13:02:18 | 14 | to paragraph 40. |
| 13:02:31 | 15 | Now, this paragraph is where you begin |
| 13:02:33 | 16 | discussing Zavgorodny; is that correct? |
| 13:02:35 | 17 | A. Yes, it is. |
| 13:02:42 | 18 | Q. Now, is Zavgorodny directed to sequencing by |
| 13:02:46 | 19 | synthesis? |
| 13:02:47 | 20 | A. No, it is not. |
| 13:02:52 | 21 | Q. Is it directed to synthetic organic chemistry? |
| 13:02:57 | 22 | A. Yes. |
| 13:02:57 | 23 | Q. And |
| 13:03:04 | 24 | A. Again, I've seen so many of these. Yes. Yes. |
| 13:03:09 | 25 | Q. Now, you talk about some other references |

| 13:03:11 | 1 | throughout your declaration, and I believe those also |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:03:15 | 2 | deal with synthetic organic chemistry. I'm just going |
| 13:03:19 | 3 | to ask you about them. If you need to see them, I'm |
| 13:03:22 | 4 | happy to show them to you, but it's just a simple |
| 13:03:24 | 5 | question. |
| 13:03:26 | 6 | Is Greene and Wuts directed to synthetic |
| 13:03:28 | 7 | organic chemistry? |
| 13:03:31 | 8 | A. It is. |
| 13:03:31 | 9 | Q. How about the Loubinoux reference? |
| 13:03:33 | 10 | A. It is. |
| 13:03:34 | 11 | Q. Now, are you familiar that Ju, the Ju |
| 13:03:38 | 12 | reference, cites to a reference, Kamal, that discusses |
| 13:03:45 | 13 | the allyl group? Are you familiar with that reference? |
| 13:03:48 | 14 | A. Yes. |
| 13:03:48 | 15 | Q. Now, is that directed to synthetic organic |
| 13:03:53 | 16 | chemistry? |
| 13:03:54 | 17 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope. |
| 13:03:55 | 18 | THE WITNESS: I'd have to see it to I would |
| 13:03:56 | 19 | like to see it to remember. Again, I apologize. I've |
| 13:03:59 | 20 | just read so many of these. |
| 13:04:01 | 21 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:04:01 | 22 | Q. No, that's fine. |
| 13:04:12 | 23 | While we're waiting for that, if you want to |
| 13:04:14 | 24 | look at Ju, column 3, right around line 22 or 23, Ju |
| 13:04:45 | 25 | introduces both the MOM and allyl group and cites to |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 13:04:49 | 1 | references by Ireland and Kamal. |
| 13:04:53 | 2 | Do you see that? |
| 13:04:54 | 3 | A. I do. |
| 13:05:03 | 4 | Q. I'm going to show you the Kamal reference, and |
| 13:05:05 | 5 | we're going to mark it as Exhibit 1018. |
| 13:05:13 | 6 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, as you know, since |
| 13:05:15 | 7 | you're marking it as a new exhibit, it's not a reference |
| 13:05:18 | 8 | that Dr. Romesberg reviewed in forming his opinions in |
| 13:05:21 | 9 | this case, and we would object as outside the scope. |
| 13:05:25 | 10 | (Exhibit 1018 was marked for identification.) |
| 13:05:27 | 11 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:05:27 | 12 | Q. Again, is this Kamal reference directed to |
| 13:05:30 | 13 | organic synthetic synthesis? |
| 13:05:33 | 14 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope. |
| 13:05:34 | 15 | THE WITNESS: So I'm glancing at his table, and |
| 13:05:37 | 16 | I would guess not based on the substrates that he shows. |
| 13:05:55 | 17 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:05:55 | 18 | Q. Is it directed to a removal method for removing |
| 13:05:58 | 19 | an allyl ether group? |
| 13:06:01 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside as the scope. |
| 13:06:04 | 21 | And, Dr. Romesberg, take as much time as you |
| 13:06:07 | 22 | need to review this. |
| 13:06:14 | 23 | THE WITNESS: From a glance at it, it looks |
| 13:06:16 | 24 | like that's correct, I mean and certainly looking at |
| 13:06:19 | 25 | the title suggests that's correct. |

| 13:06:21 | 1 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:06:22 | 2 | Q. Is Kamal directed to sequencing by synthesis? |
| 13:06:25 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Object as outside the scope. |
| 13:06:27 | 4 | THE WITNESS: From my glance as it, as I said a |
| 13:06:29 | 5 | minute ago, I don't think so. |
| 13:06:36 | 6 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to also show you the |
| 13:06:38 | 7 | Ireland reference that's cited by Ju in that column 3. |
| 13:06:42 | 8 | I'm going to mark the Ireland reference as |
| 13:06:44 | 9 | Exhibit 1019. |
| 13:06:46 | 10 | (Exhibit 1019 was marked for identification.) |
| 13:07:01 | 11 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me object to this exhibit |
| 13:07:03 | 12 | also as outside the scope as it's not a reference that |
| 13:07:06 | 13 | Dr. Romesberg considered in forming his opinions. |
| 13:07:10 | 14 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:07:10 | 15 | Q. And you can I just have one simple question: |
| 13:07:14 | 16 | Is this Ireland reference directed to synthetic organic |
| 13:07:19 | 17 | chemistry? |
| 13:07:19 | 18 | A. It looks to be. |
| 13:07:29 | 19 | MS. SWAROOP: And before you move on, I'd also |
| 13:07:31 | 20 | like to object to both Exhibits 1018 and 1019 on the |
| 13:07:35 | 21 | grounds of relevance. |
| 13:07:59 | 22 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to hand you a reference |
| 13:08:02 | 23 | with the first named author Sergey Zavgorodny which has |
| 13:08:07 | 24 | been previously marked as Exhibit 1004. |
| 13:08:10 | 25 | (Exhibit 1004 was referred to.) |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 13:08:19 | 1 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:08:19 | 2 | Q. Have you seen that reference before? |
| 13:08:20 | 3 | A. It is one of the papers that I considered, yes. |
| 13:08:23 | 4 | Q. And you've reviewed that reference? |
| 13:08:25 | 5 | A. I have. |
| 13:08:28 | 6 | Q. And was Zavgorodny directed to nucleoside |
| 13:08:33 | 7 | chemistry? |
| 13:08:34 | 8 | A. It is, correct, yes. |
| 13:08:46 | 9 | Q. Would you agree with me that Zavgorodny |
| 13:08:48 | 10 | discloses using an azidomethyl to protect the 3' |
| 13:08:56 | 11 | hydroxyl group of a nucleoside? |
| 13:09:01 | 12 | A. Yes. |
| 13:09:05 | 13 | Q. Now, this same position, the 3' hydroxyl |
| 13:09:09 | 14 | position, this is the same position that the nucleotides |
| 13:09:14 | 15 | in Ju's process require for protection? |
| 13:09:17 | 16 | MS. SWAROOP: Let me object to the form of the |
| 13:09:19 | 17 | question. |
| 13:09:22 | 18 | THE WITNESS: They both involve blocking |
| 13:09:24 | 19 | they both involve a protecting group that's modifying |
| 13:09:28 | 20 | the 3'-O group of a of course, it's of a nucleotide |
| 13:09:37 | 21 | in the end in one, and nucleoside in the other; but, |
| 13:09:43 | 22 | yeah, I mean that's those obviously are related. |
| 13:09:47 | 23 | And I'd also mention that Zavgorodny's is also |
| 13:09:50 | 24 | one of many the azidomethyl is one of many that he |
| 13:09:56 | 25 | suggests. |

| 13:09:56 | 1 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:09:57 | 2 | Q. Now this 3' hydroxyl position that Zavgorodny |
| 13:10:04 | 3 | is showing the azidomethyl group protecting, is this the |
| 13:10:07 | 4 | same position that the nucleotides in Tsien's process |
| 13:10:11 | 5 | require for protection? |
| 13:10:12 | 6 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 13:10:13 | 7 | question. |
| 13:10:15 | 8 | THE WITNESS: It is. |
| 13:10:19 | 9 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:10:19 | 10 | Q. Now, you would agree with me that a person of |
| 13:10:22 | 11 | ordinary skill back in 2002 that's considering |
| 13:10:28 | 12 | protecting groups for the 3' hydroxyl position of a |
| 13:10:31 | 13 | nucleotide would not disregard a blocking group just |
| 13:10:36 | 14 | because the art only showed it being used with |
| 13:10:40 | 15 | nucleosides? |
| 13:10:44 | 16 | A. No. As I discussed earlier, there would be a |
| 13:10:46 | 17 | lot that would weigh into your decision about how |
| 13:10:49 | 18 | promising a particular protecting group was to explore, |
| 13:10:52 | 19 | and the fact that it only had been looked at with a |
| 13:10:56 | 20 | nucleoside would not have been particularly strong |
| 13:10:58 | 21 | against you strong motivation for being against being |
| 13:11:03 | 22 | interested in it. |
| 13:11:04 | 23 | Q. Now, in 2002, would a person of ordinary skill |
| 13:11:08 | 24 | in the art have been able to convert a nucleoside |
| 13:11:11 | 25 | molecule to a nucleotide molecule? |

| 13:11:23 | 1 | A. Yeah. I mean maybe not efficiently, but that's |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:11:26 | 2 | actually a reaction that we made a pretty significant |
| 13:11:29 | 3 | improvement to a couple years ago, so the yields before |
| 13:11:32 | 4 | our improvement were actually pretty lousy. |
| 13:11:35 | 5 | But, yeah, they could have in a very |
| 13:11:37 | 6 | inefficient way. It's actually not a trivial thing to |
| 13:11:41 | 7 | do, to make a nucleoside that way sorry, to make a |
| 13:11:44 | 8 | nucleotide triphosphate. But, yeah, they could have |
| 13:11:47 | 9 | accessed the triphosphate. |
| 13:11:50 | 10 | Q. Now, you would agree with me that Zavgorodny |
| 13:11:54 | 11 | teaches that the azidomethyl group can be removed to |
| 13:11:57 | 12 | expose a 3' hydroxyl group? |
| 13:12:01 | 13 | A. I'd have to carefully look at this again, but I |
| 13:12:04 | 14 | don't think he shows data. I think that he describes |
| 13:12:06 | 15 | them as being removable, yes. |
| 13:12:08 | 16 | So, again, it comes to my discomfort on using |
| 13:12:12 | 17 | the word "teaching" in a legal way. He suggests it. |
| 13:12:19 | 18 | Q. Now, as an example, Zavgorodny teaches that |
| 13:12:23 | 19 | azidomethyl can be removed or suggests, to use your |
| 13:12:28 | 20 | language by using triphenylphosphine and aqueous |
| 13:12:33 | 21 | pyridine. |
| 13:12:34 | 22 | Would you agree with that? |
| 13:12:35 | 23 | A. Yes, I do. |
| 13:12:42 | 24 | Q. Are you familiar with the Staudinger reaction? |
| 13:12:45 | 25 | A. I am. |

| 13:12:50 | 1 | Q. Can you just explain briefly, what the |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:12:53 | 2 | Staudinger reaction is. |
| 13:12:55 | 3 | A. How much detail would you like? |
| 13:12:56 | 4 | Q. Do it at a fairly high level at first. |
| 13:13:00 | 5 | A. So a Staudinger reaction is a reaction that |
| 13:13:02 | 6 | results in the reduction of an azide to an amine. |
| 13:13:07 | 7 | It goes through the intermediate of something |
| 13:13:10 | 8 | called a phospho ylide, so it's you have you have |
| 13:13:16 | 9 | triphenylphosphine. The triphenylphosphine attacks a |
| 13:13:22 | 10 | nitrogen, a terminal nitrogen. |
| 13:13:24 | 11 | You form a four-membered ring, it's called the |
| 13:13:28 | 12 | ylide, that's y-l-i-d-e; that then expuls the |
| 13:13:32 | 13 | driving force for the decomposition there is expulsion |
| 13:13:36 | 14 | of diatomic nitrogen, N2, and that leaves behind what's |
| 13:13:40 | 15 | called this ylide, this P-minus attached directly to a |
| 13:13:44 | 16 | nitrogen, and sorry, a P-nitrogen ylide, and that |
| 13:13:51 | 17 | then then that hydrolyzed that cleaves to an |
| 13:13:54 | 18 | amine. |
| 13:13:56 | 19 | Q. You mentioned triphenylphosphine. |
| 13:13:59 | 20 | Is the Staudinger reaction limited to using |
| 13:14:02 | 21 | triphenylphosphine to react with an azide, or can |
| 13:14:11 | 22 | A. You know, that depends on who you ask. Purists |
| 13:14:15 | 23 | love name reactions, synthetic chemists. And so |
| 13:14:20 | 24 | technically I think it is, but I think in practice, it's |
| 13:14:22 | 25 | not. You can access the same mechanism with different |

| 13:14:25 | 1 | phosphines. |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:14:27 | 2 | Q. Now, back to Zavgorodny, we mentioned that the |
| 13:14:33 | 3 | conditions that Zavgorodny suggests for removing an |
| 13:14:39 | 4 | azidomethyl triphenylphosphine and aqueous pyridine at |
| 13:14:45 | 5 | 20 degrees Celsius. |
| 13:14:48 | 6 | Would one of skill in the art recognize these |
| 13:14:51 | 7 | removal conditions as involving the Staudinger reaction? |
| 13:14:59 | 8 | A. Are you asking if the Staudinger reaction |
| 13:15:02 | 9 | requires pyridine as a solvent? |
| 13:15:05 | 10 | Q. No, just would whether one of skill in the art, |
| 13:15:09 | 11 | reading Zavgorodny back in 2002, would they recognize |
| 13:15:14 | 12 | that the mechanism that Zavgorodny suggests, |
| 13:15:18 | 13 | triphenylphosphine would they recognize that as |
| 13:15:21 | 14 | involving the Staudinger reaction? |
| 13:15:25 | 15 | A. Yes, that you're asking would the would |
| 13:15:27 | 16 | someone realize that that deprotection mechanism was via |
| 13:15:31 | 17 | Staudinger reaction? |
| 13:15:33 | 18 | Q. Yes. |
| 13:15:33 | 19 | A. Yeah. |
| 13:15:38 | 20 | Q. In 2002, were water soluble phosphines reagents |
| 13:15:46 | 21 | known? |
| 13:15:46 | 22 | A. Yeah. They were rare, but they were known. |
| 13:15:49 | 23 | Q. In 2002, was TCEP known? |
| 13:15:53 | 24 | A. I believe so, yeah. I think Carolyn |
| 13:15:56 | 25 | Bertozzi I don't know if she was the first, but she |

| 13:15:59 | 1 | published a reaction that became, in later years, |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:16:01 | 2 | extraordinarily popular that's related to the Staudinger |
| 13:16:05 | 3 | reaction, so it's called the Staudinger ligation. The |
| 13:16:08 | 4 | differences are, I think from our for our issues, |
| 13:16:11 | 5 | trivial. |
| 13:16:12 | 6 | And her method requires water, use an a |
| 13:16:19 | 7 | water environment, so she had to modify it to for |
| 13:16:22 | 8 | that. |
| 13:16:27 | 9 | Q. Again, looking at conditions that Zavgorodny |
| 13:16:31 | 10 | suggests, the triphenylphosphine and aqueous pyridine at |
| 13:16:34 | 11 | 20 degrees Celsius, would a person of ordinary skill in |
| 13:16:40 | 12 | the art understand that you could use the |
| 13:16:43 | 13 | triphenylphosphine with other organic solvents? |
| 13:16:53 | 14 | A. Yes. |
| 13:17:01 | 15 | Q. You mentioned that other water soluble |
| 13:17:04 | 16 | phosphine reagents were known. |
| 13:17:05 | 17 | Do you know what those other |
| 13:17:07 | 18 | A. No, and I |
| 13:17:07 | 19 | Q water soluble phosphine reagents are? |
| 13:17:10 | 20 | A. No. Like I said, I think that Bertozzi's |
| 13:17:13 | 21 | reagent was TCEP, but it was a very small segment of |
| 13:17:18 | 22 | the it was not used by synthetic chemists at all. |
| 13:17:22 | 23 | It was it was the beginning of what became |
| 13:17:25 | 24 | known as bioorthogonal the field of bioorthogonal |
| 13:17:29 | 25 | chemistry. |

| Deposition of Floy | yd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------|-------|---|
| 13:17:37 | 1 | Q. If you want to turn to paragraph 44 of your |
| 13:17:39 | 2 | declaration, Exhibit 2011. |
| 13:17:50 | 3 | And in this paragraph you discuss a reference |
| 13:17:52 | 4 | by Loubinoux; is that right? |
| 13:17:55 | 5 | A. Yes. |
| 13:18:01 | 6 | Q. So in 2002, if a person of ordinary skill in |
| 13:18:03 | 7 | the art is considering using an azidomethyl method group |
| 13:18:08 | 8 | to protect the 3' oxygen of a nucleotide, a person of |
| 13:18:12 | 9 | ordinary skill in the art might look to this Loubinoux |
| 13:18:16 | 10 | reference for guidance? |
| 13:18:19 | 11 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 13:18:20 | 12 | question. |
| 13:18:22 | 13 | THE WITNESS: Yes. |
| 13:18:23 | 14 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:18:23 | 15 | Q. Now, I believe it's your opinion that Loubinoux |
| 13:18:27 | 16 | would have discouraged a person of ordinary skill in the |
| 13:18:30 | 17 | art from using an azidomethyl protecting group in the Ju |
| 13:18:34 | 18 | and Tsien methods; is that right? |
| 13:18:37 | 19 | A. It is. |
| 13:19:10 | 20 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to hand you what's been |
| 13:19:14 | 21 | previously marked as Exhibit 1106. It's a reference |
| 13:19:18 | 22 | with the first named author, Loubinoux. |
| 13:19:22 | 23 | (Exhibit 1106 was referred to.) |
| 13:19:25 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:19:25 | 25 | Q. I should also point out for the record that |

| 13:19:28 | 1 | it's an English translation. The original was in |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:19:31 | 2 | French, and we've had it translated and that's what I've |
| 13:19:34 | 3 | handed to you. |
| 13:19:37 | 4 | Are you familiar with this reference? |
| 13:19:39 | 5 | A. I am. It's one that I listed as having |
| 13:19:42 | 6 | having considered when writing my declaration. |
| 13:19:46 | 7 | Q. And you have reviewed the reference? |
| 13:19:50 | 8 | A. Yes. |
| 13:19:51 | 9 | Q. Would you agree with me that Loubinoux shows |
| 13:19:54 | 10 | that successful use of an azidomethyl group to protect |
| 13:19:58 | 11 | the hydroxyl group of a phenol? |
| 13:20:02 | 12 | A. Yes. Well, "successful" is a relative term. |
| 13:20:09 | 13 | Successful for his applications, sure. |
| 13:20:12 | 14 | Q. Would you agree with me that Loubinoux |
| 13:20:14 | 15 | discloses a number of methods for removing an |
| 13:20:20 | 16 | azidomethyl group? |
| 13:20:22 | 17 | A. I believe he discusses three, so yes. |
| 13:20:25 | 18 | Q. And one of these conditions for removing the |
| 13:20:29 | 19 | azidomethyl group is triphenylphosphine and water in |
| 13:20:33 | 20 | tetrahydrofuran? |
| 13:20:39 | 21 | A. Triphenyl phosphene is aqueous THF, correct, |
| 13:20:43 | 22 | yeah. That is one of the standard conditions. |
| 13:20:47 | 23 | Q. If you'll turn to page 4 the number's on the |
| 13:20:56 | 24 | bottom you'll see that last sentence there. |
| 13:21:01 | 25 | Loubinoux discloses a removal method for azidomethyl, |

| 13:21:09 | 1 | and he talks about the treatment with triphenylphosphine |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:21:13 | 2 | and then with water, in tetrahydrofuran at 25 degrees |
| 13:21:18 | 3 | Celsius. |
| 13:21:19 | 4 | Do you see that? |
| 13:21:20 | 5 | A. I do. |
| 13:21:20 | 6 | Q. And then you see that there's a reference to 4? |
| 13:21:28 | 7 | A. I do. |
| 13:21:29 | 8 | Q. If you'll turn to the back where the references |
| 13:21:32 | 9 | are, 4 refers to publications by Vaultier's group. |
| 13:21:43 | 10 | Do you see that? |
| 13:21:44 | 11 | A. I do. |
| 13:21:46 | 12 | Q. Did you review the references identified as |
| 13:21:49 | 13 | No. 4 there? |
| 13:21:50 | 14 | A. I did not. |
| 13:22:00 | 15 | Q. Now, if you turn back to page 4, the conditions |
| 13:22:03 | 16 | we just read, triphenylphosphine and then with water in |
| 13:22:07 | 17 | tetrahydrofuran, those conditions are different than the |
| 13:22:11 | 18 | conditions that Zavgorodny suggests; is that right? |
| 13:22:13 | 19 | A. They are. |
| 13:22:21 | 20 | Q. You testified that Loubinoux teaches or |
| 13:22:24 | 21 | discloses three methods for removal of an azidomethyl |
| 13:22:30 | 22 | group? |
| 13:22:31 | 23 | A. I think three. I think he described tin |
| 13:22:32 | 24 | chloride, hydrogenation, and triphenylphosphine. |
| 13:22:39 | 25 | Q. Would you agree with me that that is not an |

| 13:22:42 | 1 | exhaustive list of the methods known to a person of |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:22:45 | 2 | ordinary skill in the art in 2002 for removing an |
| 13:22:49 | 3 | azidomethyl group? |
| 13:22:52 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Object to the form of the |
| 13:22:53 | 5 | question and object as outside the scope. |
| 13:22:55 | 6 | THE WITNESS: I haven't thought I haven't |
| 13:22:58 | 7 | considered that. I think I mean those are certainly |
| 13:23:01 | 8 | the ways I would first consider. |
| 13:23:03 | 9 | Are there other ways? Probably. |
| 13:23:08 | 10 | It would not surprise me if there were other |
| 13:23:10 | 11 | ways. I believe these are certainly the most common, I |
| 13:23:13 | 12 | believe. That's not to say that there's not another |
| 13:23:17 | 13 | reaction that could do it. |
| 13:23:18 | 14 | I mean certainly there are other reactions that |
| 13:23:20 | 15 | can do it. They tend not to be used, to my knowledge, |
| 13:23:24 | 16 | at least not used with the same frequency; in |
| 13:23:31 | 17 | particular, the same frequency as the hydrogenation and |
| 13:23:34 | 18 | the triphenylphosphine. |
| 13:23:39 | 19 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:23:39 | 20 | Q. If you turn back to paragraph 44 of your |
| 13:23:42 | 21 | declaration, about six lines down, you state that |
| 13:23:51 | 22 | "Loubinoux found no greater than 60 to 80 percent |
| 13:23:54 | 23 | removal of the azidomethyl group from phenol derivatives |
| 13:23:59 | 24 | using triphenylphosphine." |
| 13:24:02 | 25 | Is that right? |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 13:24:04 | 1 | A. Yes, that that is correct. |
| 13:24:09 | 2 | Q. Now, you say in that statement, "60 to |
| 13:24:12 | 3 | 80 percent removal." |
| 13:24:15 | 4 | Loubinoux is not actually measuring removal; is |
| 13:24:19 | 5 | that correct? |
| 13:24:37 | 6 | A. I think he is. |
| 13:24:37 | 7 | Q. Let me ask it a different way. The yields |
| 13:24:40 | 8 | given in the Loubinoux reference, and in particular |
| 13:24:44 | 9 | table 2 of the Loubinoux reference on page 7, would you |
| 13:24:52 | 10 | agree that Loubinoux is measuring the yield of the pure |
| 13:24:55 | 11 | products after the removal reaction of the azidomethyl |
| 13:24:59 | 12 | group? |
| 13:25:13 | 13 | A. I don't remember if the yields that he lists in |
| 13:25:16 | 14 | the table are so looking at table 1, he captions the |
| 13:25:23 | 15 | yield and says the yield of pure product isolated over |
| 13:25:27 | 16 | two steps; so certainly in table 1, I would agree. |
| 13:25:35 | 17 | And then table 2, he doesn't say how he |
| 13:25:38 | 18 | describes yield, and I'm trying to remember in the |
| 13:25:40 | 19 | text, I think he describes I thought he described |
| 13:25:45 | 20 | these as measured indirectly and that the yields |
| 13:25:53 | 21 | Q. Maybe I can help you. |
| 13:25:55 | 22 | If you turn to page 5 of the Loubinoux |
| 13:25:58 | 23 | reference, do you see that, I guess, second paragraph |
| 13:26:04 | 24 | there |
| 13:26:05 | 25 | A. Yes. |

| 13:26:05 | 1 | Q where it says "Table 2 Reports"? |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:26:06 | 2 | A. Yes. |
| 13:26:07 | 3 | Q. Now, does that confirm to you |
| 13:26:09 | 4 | A. Yes. |
| 13:26:09 | 5 | Q that Loubinoux |
| 13:26:10 | 6 | Just for the record, does that confirm to you |
| 13:26:12 | 7 | that Loubinoux's yields are yields of the pure product |
| 13:26:17 | 8 | after a purification? |
| 13:26:18 | 9 | A. Of 60 to 80 percent, yes. |
| 13:26:22 | 10 | Q. Now, you would agree that it's possible that |
| 13:26:25 | 11 | you can lose some of the resulting product during |
| 13:26:29 | 12 | purification process? |
| 13:26:33 | 13 | A. That is possible. |
| 13:26:36 | 14 | Q. And then, in effect, that the actual removal |
| 13:26:39 | 15 | efficiency of the azidomethyl group from the hydroxyl |
| 13:26:47 | 16 | can actually be higher than the actual purification |
| 13:26:50 | 17 | yield? |
| 13:26:52 | 18 | A. One could speculate that but, in general, |
| 13:26:55 | 19 | people want to publish good yields. It's certainly |
| 13:26:58 | 20 | the student doing it is under pressure to get the |
| 13:27:01 | 21 | correct yields, and the PI who's publishing the paper |
| 13:27:05 | 22 | wants to make his paper, his method, and his results |
| 13:27:08 | 23 | look good; so, in general, synthetic chemists try to get |
| 13:27:12 | 24 | the highest yields possible. |
| 13:27:15 | 25 | Is it there's certainly some amount lost in |

| 13:27:18 | 1 | purification. That's always the case, and you don't |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:27:21 | 2 | know how much that is. What I will say is that |
| 13:27:25 | 3 | reporting purified yields of 60 to 80 percent in no way |
| 13:27:29 | 4 | are going to give someone the expectation that the |
| 13:27:32 | 5 | yields were actually 99 percent or 98 percent and that |
| 13:27:35 | 6 | you're just losing everything up on purification. |
| 13:27:38 | 7 | Q. No? |
| 13:27:39 | 8 | A. No. |
| 13:27:39 | 9 | Q. You're not familiar with any references that |
| 13:27:42 | 10 | actually say that the reaction itself goes quantitative, |
| 13:27:50 | 11 | but when they go to purify the product, they may only |
| 13:27:53 | 12 | get 60 to 80 percent? |
| 13:27:55 | 13 | A. Oh, I'm sure that there are I'm sure there |
| 13:27:55 | 14 | are references that you can show that. What I'm talking |
| 13:27:58 | 15 | about is what the average person the average expert |
| 13:28:00 | 16 | in the field would have thought, and that is certainly |
| 13:28:03 | 17 | not the typical case. |
| 13:28:04 | 18 | So I'm sure there are cases that you get |
| 13:28:05 | 19 | 100 percent conversion and you get 10 percent recovery |
| 13:28:09 | 20 | because of some idiosyncratic aspect of the purification |
| 13:28:14 | 21 | procedure it wasn't optimized or there was just some |
| 13:28:17 | 22 | weirdness to it, it was particularly challenging but |
| 13:28:20 | 23 | certainly the vast majority of experts in the field |
| 13:28:22 | 24 | would look at 60 to 80 percent and assume that was very |
| 13:28:26 | 25 | close to the theoretical maximum. |

| 13:28:29 | 1 | Q. Now, with respect to pure product yields, a |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:28:34 | 2 | person of ordinary skill in the art could optimize |
| 13:28:38 | 3 | conditions to obtain higher yields. |
| 13:28:43 | 4 | Would you agree with that? |
| 13:28:45 | 5 | A. Up to the maximum conversion, yes. |
| 13:28:49 | 6 | You could that is certainly possible, but |
| 13:28:52 | 7 | like I just said, some reactions are tough to purify, |
| 13:28:55 | 8 | some reactions are easy to purify, but usually people |
| 13:29:01 | 9 | consider this to be something that you could get most of |
| 13:29:03 | 10 | your product to be recovered, yes. |
| 13:29:07 | 11 | Q. So if you had a product that was difficult to |
| 13:29:09 | 12 | purify, it's possible that the reaction actually goes |
| 13:29:13 | 13 | quantitative but that because of the difficult |
| 13:29:16 | 14 | purification products, you actually get a low pure |
| 13:29:20 | 15 | product yield? |
| 13:29:21 | 16 | A. That's certainly possible, and I certainly |
| 13:29:24 | 17 | would expect that to be pointed out in the text, because |
| 13:29:28 | 18 | people could say that they measured yields by NMR, |
| 13:29:31 | 19 | people could say that they measured yields by UV and |
| 13:29:35 | 20 | they consistently found the reaction itself yielded |
| 13:29:38 | 21 | this, but then upon purification, they could only |
| 13:29:41 | 22 | recover this. |
| 13:29:41 | 23 | Typically a good scientist then would track |
| 13:29:43 | 24 | down and show where he'd lost the material, was it in |
| 13:29:45 | 25 | some sort of extraction, and then he could show it was |

| 13:29:48 | 1 | partitioning in both layers and they couldn't get it |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:29:52 | 2 | out. |
| 13:29:52 | 3 | So you would track that down. You probab |
| 13:29:54 | 4 | certainly would not just leave it at 60 percent or |
| 13:29:57 | 5 | 50 percent, or whatever the lower yield was. You would |
| 13:30:00 | 6 | probably point that out, and you would probably do a |
| 13:30:03 | 7 | little science to try to fix it and report it. |
| 13:30:06 | 8 | Q. Now, in organic chemistry, synthetic organic |
| 13:30:09 | 9 | chemistry, isn't an 80 percent pure product yield, |
| 13:30:15 | 10 | isn't that considered good? |
| 13:30:16 | 11 | A. It depends who you ask, but generally no. |
| 13:30:21 | 12 | So it is a synthetic chemists, how do I |
| 13:30:24 | 13 | describe them? Proud, competitive, yields |
| 13:30:27 | 14 | extraordinarily high are expected, and I mean it's an |
| 13:30:34 | 15 | interesting thing, because in my group, for example |
| 13:30:36 | 16 | I'm not a synthetic chemist and so we do |
| 13:30:40 | 17 | transformations for our own purposes, and I don't allow |
| 13:30:43 | 18 | my students a lot of luxury to optimize things because |
| 13:30:46 | 19 | we're interested in doing something with it. |
| 13:30:49 | 20 | And I'll have fights where I'll say, That's |
| 13:30:52 | 21 | good enough; let's move on to what we really want to do, |
| 13:30:54 | 22 | as opposed to a synthetic chemist, where what they're |
| 13:30:58 | 23 | doing is the art of synthesis. They're producing |
| 13:31:01 | 24 | things, and so it's a constant fight with me and my |
| 13:31:04 | 25 | students to make them get past that. Don't worry that |

| 13:31:07 | 1 | it's in the 70 percent yield, because we want to go on |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:31:11 | 2 | and do something. That just gets buried in the |
| 13:31:14 | 3 | materials and methods. No one cares. |
| 13:31:16 | 4 | In papers that are synthetic papers, this is |
| 13:31:19 | 5 | what distinguishes good ones from bad ones good |
| 13:31:23 | 6 | synthetic chemists from poor synthetic chemists: People |
| 13:31:27 | 7 | who achieve 96 percent yields. |
| 13:31:30 | 8 | Q. Are there other ways to measure removal |
| 13:31:32 | 9 | efficiency other than using a pure product yield? |
| 13:31:37 | 10 | A. Sure. As I mentioned earlier, you could |
| 13:31:39 | 11 | measure if you were only interested in the reaction |
| 13:31:42 | 12 | and you were trying to quantify that, you could use |
| 13:31:44 | 13 | you could characterize it in the unpurified state. |
| 13:31:47 | 14 | So if it has a unique NMR signal, a unique UV |
| 13:31:53 | 15 | signal, you could characterize it that way. And that |
| 13:31:56 | 16 | gets a little tricky, and the reason people generally |
| 13:32:00 | 17 | don't like that is because you're going to get a signal, |
| 13:32:00 | 18 | let's say an NMR signal, and you have to then find a way |
| 13:32:02 | 19 | to translate that into a yield. |
| 13:32:04 | 20 | So you have to know what the pure compounds NMR |
| 13:32:06 | 21 | signal looks like and how that NMR signal scales as a |
| 13:32:11 | 22 | function of how much material you have. |
| 13:32:13 | 23 | That means you have to have the pure product. |
| 13:32:15 | 24 | So if you can get the pure product, then you're going to |
| 13:32:20 | 25 | get a yield; and if you can't get the pure product, then |

| 13:32:23 | 1 | you can't really use these techniques, so these |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:32:27 | 2 | techniques are going to be approximate by definition. |
| 13:32:29 | 3 | As a result, they're going to be approximate techniques. |
| 13:32:33 | 4 | Q. If you could use such methods, the NMR method, |
| 13:32:37 | 5 | for example, would they be more accurate as a way to |
| 13:32:40 | 6 | measure the actual removal efficiency than relying on |
| 13:32:43 | 7 | the pure product yield? |
| 13:32:46 | 8 | A. Maybe. I mean, what I just said is they are |
| 13:32:47 | 9 | inherently less accurate because you have to do a |
| 13:32:51 | 10 | translation. |
| 13:32:52 | 11 | There's nothing more accurate than putting |
| 13:32:54 | 12 | something on a scale and weighing it. That's the most |
| 13:32:57 | 13 | accurate way to do it. That's why synthetic chemists |
| 13:33:01 | 14 | always try to do that. |
| 13:33:03 | 15 | Your if you're not doing that and you're |
| 13:33:05 | 16 | trying to use a method like NMR, like we're describing, |
| 13:33:09 | 17 | or UV, where you actually measure your product using |
| 13:33:13 | 18 | that as a surrogate signal, you have to then translate |
| 13:33:16 | 19 | that into a quantity that's present, and you need to |
| 13:33:19 | 20 | know if it's UV, it's called molar extinction |
| 13:33:22 | 21 | coefficient, and NMR, it's just the it's called the |
| 13:33:26 | 22 | gyromagnetic ratio. |
| 13:33:29 | 23 | And so what these are, these are constant |
| 13:33:33 | 24 | proportionalities that relate the intensity of the |
| 13:33:36 | 25 | signal to the compound, and all compounds have different |

| 13:33:39 | 1 | values. So if you can't purify the compound, you don't |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:33:43 | 2 | know what the value is, so what people tend to do is |
| 13:33:46 | 3 | they tend to say, Well, someone else purified this |
| 13:33:49 | 4 | related compound and it has an extinction coefficient of |
| 13:33:54 | 5 | this, so we're going to use that. |
| 13:33:56 | 6 | That is maybe close; maybe it's not. So, by |
| 13:33:59 | 7 | definition it's inherently a less accurate method. It's |
| 13:34:04 | 8 | more accurate from the simple perspective that you're |
| 13:34:07 | 9 | eliminating a step so you're not purifying it, but it's |
| 13:34:11 | 10 | inherently less accurate because you are actually not |
| 13:34:14 | 11 | able to measure what you're trying to measure. |
| 13:34:18 | 12 | Q. Now, you would agree with me that if your |
| 13:34:21 | 13 | purification process is inefficient, then your pure |
| 13:34:26 | 14 | product yield is not a good proxy for your removal |
| 13:34:30 | 15 | efficiency? |
| 13:34:31 | 16 | A. Sure, yes. But, again, if I were if I |
| 13:34:37 | 17 | found |
| 13:34:38 | 18 | Q. There's no question pending. |
| 13:34:43 | 19 | MS. SWAROOP: Dr. Romesberg, finish your |
| 13:34:45 | 20 | response, please. |
| 13:34:46 | 21 | MR. SEGAL: I'm just trying to get through. |
| 13:34:48 | 22 | MS. SWAROOP: Finish your response, please. |
| 13:34:48 | 23 | THE WITNESS: What I would say is that as far |
| 13:34:49 | 24 | as it not being a good proxy, if you can't purify it, I |
| 13:34:52 | 25 | don't think simply reporting I think that what the |

| 13:34:56 | 1 | correct prox what the correct response there would |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:34:58 | 2 | be, would be to purify it, show the yield you get, |
| 13:35:02 | 3 | measure the extinction coefficient, use that to go back |
| 13:35:05 | 4 | and measure what the actual yield was by your NMR signal |
| 13:35:10 | 5 | or UV signal or whatever, and describe that. |
| 13:35:13 | 6 | And then if you do that, I would find that |
| 13:35:15 | 7 | convincing and I would say, Okay, it was a purification |
| 13:35:18 | 8 | problem; they couldn't purify it for this reason but |
| 13:35:21 | 9 | that's the purification yield and that's the inherent |
| 13:35:25 | 10 | reaction yield. |
| 13:35:26 | 11 | In |
| 13:35:27 | 12 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:35:27 | 13 | Q. I think I understand you. |
| 13:35:29 | 14 | So the best method would be to first purify it, |
| 13:35:32 | 15 | look at the pure product, get the proper NMR what did |
| 13:35:37 | 16 | you call that? A signal? NMR |
| 13:35:39 | 17 | A. Technically, it's a gyromagnetic ratio. It's |
| 13:35:43 | 18 | just the constant proportionality between the signal and |
| 13:35:46 | 19 | the quantity of the material. |
| 13:35:48 | 20 | Q. Use that NMR signal for shorthand to |
| 13:35:51 | 21 | actually measure in real time the removal efficiency. |
| 13:35:55 | 22 | Would that be the best method? |
| 13:35:57 | 23 | A. That would be a convincing method. I mean |
| 13:35:59 | 24 | best, that would simply probably give you the most |
| 13:36:03 | 25 | accurate data, yeah. |

| 13:36:06 | 1 | Q. Now, the bottom of paragraph 45, second to last |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:36:17 | 2 | sentence there, you state "One of ordinary skill would |
| 13:36:24 | 3 | view Table 2 of Loubinoux as teaching that azidomethyl |
| 13:36:27 | 4 | cleavage yields can vary widely, even when the same |
| 13:36:31 | 5 | removal conditions are used." |
| 13:36:36 | 6 | Now, isn't it possible that the variation could |
| 13:36:39 | 7 | be due to the fact that some of the products are more |
| 13:36:42 | 8 | easily purified? |
| 13:36:49 | 9 | A. It is technically not impossible for that to be |
| 13:36:51 | 10 | the case. It would be very unlikely. |
| 13:36:53 | 11 | They're related compounds and, again, if |
| 13:36:57 | 12 | that was the case look, the average expert reading |
| 13:37:00 | 13 | this would not assume that because, in general, again |
| 13:37:02 | 14 | let me emphasize that product isolation tends not to |
| 13:37:07 | 15 | ever limit yields. It's just not very common; and if it |
| 13:37:12 | 16 | does, it's just not much; and if it does, you'd think |
| 13:37:15 | 17 | that the author would go out of his way to explain that. |
| 13:37:18 | 18 | In the absence of such an explanation, I think |
| 13:37:20 | 19 | that people would look at the sort of data that's |
| 13:37:23 | 20 | reported in that table and assume that those were |
| 13:37:27 | 21 | reaction efficiencies. |
| 13:37:29 | 22 | Q. Now, the variation in Table 2 that you refer to |
| 13:37:34 | 23 | in your paragraph 45 |
| 13:37:36 | 24 | A. This is I'm sorry. This is Table 2 in |
| 13:37:38 | 25 | Loubinoux? |

| 13:37:39 | 1 | Q. Loubinoux, right. |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:37:49 | 2 | Could that variation in Table 2 of |
| 13:37:52 | 3 | Loubinoux, could that be due to the use of different |
| 13:37:56 | 4 | eluents during the purification process? |
| 13:38:03 | 5 | A. Sure. But, again, what people the reason |
| 13:38:06 | 6 | different eluents are used is because they're |
| 13:38:08 | 7 | yielding optimizing yield; they're not just randomly |
| 13:38:13 | 8 | selected. And this is common, common practice. |
| 13:38:44 | 9 | Q. If you will turn to paragraph 50 of your |
| 13:38:47 | 10 | declaration, if you're on page 24 there, about three |
| 13:38:57 | 11 | lines up from the bottom, you state that the efficiency |
| 13:39:03 | 12 | of the conversion of an azide to an amine can be |
| 13:39:07 | 13 | evaluated as an upper limit to what could have been |
| 13:39:10 | 14 | expected for the entire azidomethyl group removal |
| 13:39:14 | 15 | reaction. |
| 13:39:15 | 16 | Is that your opinion? |
| 13:39:24 | 17 | A. Yes. |
| 13:39:24 | 18 | Q. What's the other step? |
| 13:39:26 | 19 | A. The other step is a hydrolysis step. You |
| 13:39:28 | 20 | once you have the amine, it decomposes to yeah, I'm |
| 13:39:42 | 21 | sorry. I'm drawing a blank. Hold on one second. |
| 13:39:55 | 22 | It's hydro water mediated hydrolysis to the |
| 13:39:59 | 23 | alcohol. |
| 13:40:02 | 24 | Q. Now, do you have any evidence that this |
| 13:40:05 | 25 | hydrolysis step would not be quantitative? |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 13:40:10 | 1 | A. In what case? |
| 13:40:14 | 2 | Q. In the case of removing an azidomethyl group. |
| 13:40:17 | 3 | A. It very much depends on what you're removing it |
| 13:40:20 | 4 | from. |
| 13:40:22 | 5 | Would you like me to explain that? |
| 13:40:24 | 6 | Q. How about if you're removing it from a hydroxyl |
| 13:40:28 | 7 | group? |
| 13:40:28 | 8 | A. So a hydroxyl group can be very different. A |
| 13:40:31 | 9 | phenolic hydroxyl group is very different than an |
| 13:40:35 | 10 | aliphatic hydroxyl group. |
| 13:40:37 | 11 | Q. How about a hydroxyl group on a nucleotide |
| 13:40:39 | 12 | molecule? |
| 13:40:40 | 13 | A. That would be aliphatic. That's going to be, |
| 13:40:42 | 14 | in general, much worse than a phenolic oxygen and the |
| 13:40:48 | 15 | reason is the ability to cleave that depends on the |
| 13:40:50 | 16 | stability of the free hydroxyl, in particular the |
| 13:40:55 | 17 | free before you protonate it, when you're breaking |
| 13:40:59 | 18 | that bond, there's going to be negative charge building |
| 13:41:03 | 19 | up on that oxygen. This is the mechanism of that step. |
| 13:41:08 | 20 | The stability of that negative charge there |
| 13:41:10 | 21 | will be a large will make a very large contribution |
| 13:41:11 | 22 | to how fast and efficient that reaction is. |
| 13:41:14 | 23 | When you have a phenolic oxygen, that electron |
| 13:41:18 | 24 | is very stable because it's delocalized into the |
| 13:41:21 | 25 | phenol into the aromatic ring. |

| 13:41:25 | 1 | You don't have such a stabilization option. |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:41:27 | 2 | That's not possible with an aliphatic, so aliphatics are |
| 13:41:32 | 3 | a little bit harder to predict. |
| 13:41:35 | 4 | Let me say that in general, and the reason I |
| 13:41:37 | 5 | tried to be clear about this, was that in general in |
| 13:41:41 | 6 | general, this step with a good-leaving group like a |
| 13:41:45 | 7 | phenol, will not limit the yield because it's going to |
| 13:41:48 | 8 | happen fast and instantaneously. |
| 13:41:51 | 9 | I mean if you look at Loubinoux's title of his |
| 13:41:55 | 10 | paper, he talks about unstable phenols, because they're |
| 13:41:58 | 11 | not stable because they're hydrolyzing in this last |
| 13:42:01 | 12 | step. |
| 13:42:01 | 13 | Aliphatics aren't like that, and so the |
| 13:42:06 | 14 | question is, how unstable are they? And there |
| 13:42:10 | 15 | certainly there certainly will be examples when they |
| 13:42:14 | 16 | could slow the reaction and actually limit efficiency. |
| 13:42:18 | 17 | That's very unlikely to be the case with phenols and |
| 13:42:21 | 18 | it's just sort of hard to guess as to whether or not |
| 13:42:23 | 19 | with aliphatic compounds. It just depends on how stable |
| 13:42:26 | 20 | those leaving groups are. |
| 13:42:28 | 21 | And so, at best, they can not contribute |
| 13:42:32 | 22 | anything; at worst, they could slow the reaction down |
| 13:42:36 | 23 | and make it less efficient. |
| 13:42:38 | 24 | Q. But do you have any evidence or support that |
| 13:42:44 | 25 | the hydrolysis step would slow it down or make it less |

| 13:42:47 | 1 | efficient? |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:42:48 | 2 | A. No. I what I just described were chemical |
| 13:42:50 | 3 | principles. |
| 13:43:02 | 4 | No, let me may I modify that question |
| 13:43:04 | 5 | that answer slightly? |
| 13:43:05 | 6 | Q. Sure. |
| 13:43:06 | 7 | A. For example, we just read here where people |
| 13:43:08 | 8 | talked about the reaction done with triphenylphosphine |
| 13:43:10 | 9 | and THF followed by the addition of water. |
| 13:43:14 | 10 | You don't add that water, you're not going to |
| 13:43:16 | 11 | get that last hydrolysis step. It's going to be |
| 13:43:20 | 12 | infinitely slow. So one could easily imagine an example |
| 13:43:23 | 13 | where you only have a little bit of water in there. |
| 13:43:27 | 14 | That hydrolysis step would become really slow and it |
| 13:43:30 | 15 | certainly would limit the reaction. So if you were |
| 13:43:31 | 16 | trying to run a Staudinger-like reaction in the presence |
| 13:43:33 | 17 | of only a trace amount of water, that step, because it |
| 13:43:36 | 18 | requires the it requires the participation of a water |
| 13:43:39 | 19 | molecule, that step will become slow and it will limit |
| 13:43:43 | 20 | the entire reaction, it will limit the entire |
| 13:43:46 | 21 | efficiency, it will limit the overall efficiency. So |
| 13:43:49 | 22 | that's a simple case where it would limit the |
| 13:43:54 | 23 | efficiency. |
| 13:44:12 | 24 | Q. Did you look for any follow-up references that |
| 13:44:16 | 25 | maybe improved upon the pure product yield yields of |

| 13:44:20 | 1 | the Loubinoux reference? |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:44:22 | 2 | A. So what I did when I started this work for this |
| 13:44:25 | 3 | IPR, is I just looked in general at Staudinger reactions |
| 13:44:29 | 4 | that had been published. |
| 13:44:30 | 5 | None jumped out to me. I didn't note any of |
| 13:44:35 | 6 | them as being of more significance than what we wound up |
| 13:44:38 | 7 | with here. So I did not see any that had high yields, |
| 13:44:43 | 8 | and that's not to say there aren't any out there. I |
| 13:44:51 | 9 | just didn't find them. |
| 13:44:55 | 10 | Q. If you'll take a look at table 1 in your |
| 13:44:59 | 11 | declaration, starts on page 25. |
| 13:45:05 | 12 | And, again, just so we're clear, you have a |
| 13:45:08 | 13 | column that says "Yield" in that table; is that correct? |
| 13:45:13 | 14 | A. I do, yes. |
| 13:45:14 | 15 | Q. And those yields are, again, pure product |
| 13:45:17 | 16 | yields? |
| 13:45:18 | 17 | A. I believe so. |
| 13:45:20 | 18 | Q. So they're not actually measuring the removal |
| 13:45:22 | 19 | efficiency, or they're actually here is the reduction |
| 13:45:27 | 20 | from the azide to the amine? |
| 13:45:30 | 21 | A. Correct. Right. Correct. Again, I'd like to |
| 13:45:34 | 22 | emphasize that you could apply this logic to any |
| 13:45:38 | 23 | reaction, in which case the entire body of our |
| 13:45:41 | 24 | understanding of chemical reactivity would be in |
| 13:45:43 | 25 | question, and there's no one who thinks that. |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|--|
| 13:45:46 | 1 | These kind of yields are what the field of |
| 13:45:49 | 2 | synthetic chemistry is based on. |
| 13:46:25 | 3 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to hand you what's been |
| 13:46:28 | 4 | previously marked as Exhibit 2013, and it's a reference |
| 13:46:32 | 5 | with the first named author, Ranganathan. |
| 13:46:38 | 6 | (Exhibit 2013 was referred to.) |
| 13:46:40 | 7 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:46:56 | 8 | Q. Is this the reference you're referring to on |
| 13:46:58 | 9 | table 1 on page 25 of your declaration? |
| 13:47:01 | 10 | A. It would appear to be, yes. |
| 13:47:07 | 11 | Q. Again, just to confirm, if you want to look on |
| 13:47:11 | 12 | page 4343, the 50 percent yield in your table 1 is a |
| 13:47:16 | 13 | reference to a pure product yield? |
| 13:47:20 | 14 | A. I believe that is correct. |
| 13:47:25 | 15 | Q. And this Exhibit 2013, the purification process |
| 13:47:34 | 16 | is described as a two-step process; a Dekker column |
| 13:47:39 | 17 | followed by crystallization? Would you agree with me? |
| 13:47:42 | 18 | A. Yes. |
| 13:47:46 | 19 | Q. Would you agree that it's possible that you |
| 13:47:49 | 20 | lose some product when you perform the Dekker column |
| 13:47:53 | 21 | purification step? |
| 13:47:54 | 22 | A. It is. |
| 13:47:54 | 23 | Q. Now, is it also possible that you lose some |
| 13:47:59 | 24 | product when you perform the crystallization step? |
| 13:48:04 | 25 | A. It is. |

| 13:48:05 | 1 | Q. So you would agree with me that the actual |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:48:09 | 2 | efficiency of the reaction, the conversion of the azide |
| 13:48:14 | 3 | to the amine, could actually be much higher than the |
| 13:48:17 | 4 | 50 percent yield? |
| 13:48:19 | 5 | A. I would not agree with that, just because you |
| 13:48:21 | 6 | used the word "much." |
| 13:48:23 | 7 | Q. It could be higher? |
| 13:48:24 | 8 | A. Sure. |
| 13:48:34 | 9 | Q. Do you see where we're looking there above the |
| 13:48:37 | 10 | figure 4343, the top figure? In that second full |
| 13:48:41 | 11 | paragraph where Ranganathan discloses his mechanism for |
| 13:48:50 | 12 | reducing the azide to the amine, he says "treatment of |
| 13:48:56 | 13 | compound VIIIb with triphenylphosphine and pyridine." |
| 13:49:02 | 14 | Do you see that? |
| 13:49:03 | 15 | A. I do. |
| 13:49:04 | 16 | Q. He references a reference 11. If you turn to |
| 13:49:10 | 17 | the back, 11 is to a reference by Mungall. |
| 13:49:19 | 18 | Do you know if that's the Mungall reference |
| 13:49:21 | 19 | that you also referred to in your table 1? |
| 13:49:24 | 20 | A. I do not know. I believe it is. |
| 13:49:28 | 21 | Q. Well, if you just compare the citation to |
| 13:49:31 | 22 | A. It would appear to be, yes. |
| 13:49:51 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: Okay. I'm going to hand to you |
| 13:49:53 | 24 | what has been previously marked as Exhibit 2014. It's a |
| 13:49:58 | 25 | reference with the first named author, Mungall. |

| 13:50:04 | 1 | (Exhibit 2014 was referred to.) |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:50:10 | 2 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:50:10 | 3 | Q. Is this the Mungall reference that you refer to |
| 13:50:13 | 4 | in your table 1 in your declaration? |
| 13:50:15 | 5 | A. It would appear to be, yes. |
| 13:50:35 | 6 | Q. Now, would you agree that Mungall uses ammonia |
| 13:50:38 | 7 | to hydrolyze the intermediate formed I'm going to |
| 13:50:43 | 8 | butcher this phosphinimine? |
| 13:50:47 | 9 | A. Yes. |
| 13:50:55 | 10 | Q. You would agree that the yields that you |
| 13:50:57 | 11 | provide in your table are, again, pure product yields |
| 13:51:01 | 12 | A. Yes. |
| 13:51:01 | 13 | Q is that correct? |
| 13:51:03 | 14 | And each yield in the table represents the |
| 13:51:09 | 15 | yield after a multi-step purification process? |
| 13:51:13 | 16 | A. Yes. |
| 13:51:20 | 17 | Q. And, again, it's possible that the actual |
| 13:51:23 | 18 | conversion efficiency of the azido to the amine could be |
| 13:51:27 | 19 | higher than the pure product yield? |
| 13:51:30 | 20 | A. Unlikely. Possible. It is not impossible. |
| 13:51:37 | 21 | For about the fifth time, it is very unlikely that it |
| 13:51:42 | 22 | would be significantly higher. |
| 13:51:53 | 23 | Q. And is it possible that if you changed some of |
| 13:51:58 | 24 | the reagents to reduce the azido to the amine, that you |
| 13:52:04 | 25 | could end up with higher yields? |

| 13:52:08 | 1 | A. That is possible. Again, it all depends on how |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:52:14 | 2 | good of a job they did in figuring what their conditions |
| 13:52:16 | 3 | are. If you assume they did a poor job |
| 13:52:20 | 4 | Q. Now, did you look for any references by other |
| 13:52:22 | 5 | researchers that followed up on the the methods used |
| 13:52:29 | 6 | in Mungall? |
| 13:52:31 | 7 | A. Not explicitly, no. |
| 13:52:43 | 8 | MR. SEGAL: You can put that one aside. |
| 13:52:56 | 9 | I'm going to hand you what's been previously |
| 13:52:59 | 10 | marked as Exhibit 2015. It's U.S. patent 5,959,089. |
| 13:53:11 | 11 | (Exhibit 2015 was referred to.) |
| 13:53:15 | 12 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:53:22 | 13 | Q. You've seen this document before? |
| 13:53:24 | 14 | A. Yes, I have. |
| 13:53:25 | 15 | Q. Is this the patent that you reference in your |
| 13:53:29 | 16 | table 1 in your declaration? |
| 13:53:30 | 17 | A. It would appear to be. |
| 13:53:35 | 18 | Q. Just looking at your table there, the azido |
| 13:53:44 | 19 | group is not attached to a nucleotide; is that right? |
| 13:53:49 | 20 | A. That is correct. |
| 13:53:49 | 21 | Q. And it's not attached to a nucleoside either; |
| 13:53:53 | 22 | is that correct? |
| 13:53:54 | 23 | A. That is correct. |
| 13:53:57 | 24 | Q. And the hydrolysis step used in Exhibit 2015 |
| 13:54:05 | 25 | uses concentrated ammonia; is that right? |

| 13:54:09 | 1 | A. Yes. |
|----------|----|--|
| 13:54:12 | 2 | Q. And, again, that the yield provided in your |
| 13:54:15 | 3 | table and the yield discussed in Exhibit 2015 is the |
| 13:54:20 | 4 | isolated product yield; is that right? |
| 13:54:23 | 5 | A. I believe that is correct, yes. |
| 13:54:27 | 6 | Q. And Exhibit 2015 discusses actually a |
| 13:54:33 | 7 | multi-purification step; is that correct? |
| 13:54:36 | 8 | A. I'm sorry. Would you repeat that. |
| 13:54:38 | 9 | Q. This Exhibit 2015, the patent that we've been |
| 13:54:43 | 10 | discussing for isolating the pure product and for |
| 13:54:48 | 11 | determining the yield, this patent uses a multi-step |
| 13:54:53 | 12 | purification process; is that right? |
| 13:54:55 | 13 | A. Could you point me to that. |
| 13:55:01 | 14 | Q. If you'll look at page 9, column 16, example 9. |
| 13:55:18 | 15 | A. Yes, that's correct. |
| 13:55:25 | 16 | Q. So it's possible during these multiple steps in |
| 13:55:27 | 17 | the purification process, you'll lose some of your |
| 13:55:30 | 18 | product during each one of these steps; is that correct? |
| 13:55:33 | 19 | A. You know, again, every time you ask me this, |
| 13:55:35 | 20 | I'm going to say correct. There's it's likely that a |
| 13:55:38 | 21 | small amount could be lost. It is unlikely that that is |
| 13:55:42 | 22 | a significant amount. |
| 13:56:05 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to hand to you what's |
| 13:56:07 | 24 | been previously marked as Exhibit 2016. It's a |
| 13:56:11 | 25 | reference with the first named author, Pilard. |

| 13:56:17 | 1 | (Exhibit 2016 was referred to.) |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:56:20 | 2 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 13:56:20 | 3 | Q. If you'll look at your table 1 again, is this |
| 13:56:23 | 4 | the reference, Exhibit 2016, that you refer to in |
| 13:56:29 | 5 | table 1 of your declaration? |
| 13:56:31 | 6 | A. It would appear to be, yes. |
| 13:56:34 | 7 | Q. And, again, your table shows that the azido |
| 13:56:38 | 8 | group that's being reduced to the amine is not attached |
| 13:56:41 | 9 | to a nucleotide; is that right? |
| 13:56:44 | 10 | A. That is correct. |
| 13:56:44 | 11 | Q. And it's not attached to a nucleoside; is that |
| 13:56:47 | 12 | correct? |
| 13:56:48 | 13 | A. That is correct. |
| 13:56:49 | 14 | Q. And you would agree with me that the yield |
| 13:56:51 | 15 | shown in your table there is isolated product yield? |
| 13:56:58 | 16 | A. Could you point let me look let me look |
| 13:57:02 | 17 | at the paper for a second. |
| 13:57:15 | 18 | Yes. |
| 13:57:15 | 19 | Q. I can help you out here. |
| 13:57:17 | 20 | A. Yes. |
| 13:57:22 | 21 | Q. And again, just for completeness, it's possible |
| 13:57:24 | 22 | also that some of the product is lost during the |
| 13:57:27 | 23 | purification process? |
| 13:57:28 | 24 | A. A small amount, unlikely to be significant. |
| 13:57:48 | 25 | I would also point out that in none of the |

| 13:57:50 | 1 | examples that you've shown me, is there any knowledge |
|----------|----|---|
| 13:57:53 | 2 | that these are difficult compounds to obtain. They are |
| 13:57:55 | 3 | completely generic and there is no reason to suspect |
| 13:57:58 | 4 | their isolation would be challenging. |
| 13:58:02 | 5 | Q. Turn to paragraph 55 of your declaration. |
| 13:58:29 | 6 | In paragraph 55, am I correct that your opinion |
| 13:58:32 | 7 | is that you believe that pyridine would denature DNA? |
| 13:58:39 | 8 | A. Yes. |
| 13:58:39 | 9 | Q. And now, is that under any conditions? |
| 13:58:44 | 10 | A. No. It's under conditions where there's a |
| 13:58:48 | 11 | significant amount of pyridine. |
| 13:58:49 | 12 | So a trace amount of pyridine in water would |
| 13:58:53 | 13 | not denature DNA. A significant concentration of |
| 13:58:56 | 14 | pyridine, under any condition, would denature DNA. |
| 13:59:02 | 15 | Q. So regardless of the pH, pyridine would |
| 13:59:06 | 16 | denature DNA? |
| 13:59:10 | 17 | A. Certainly anything physiological. I would have |
| 13:59:13 | 18 | to think about if there was some mechanism excuse |
| 13:59:19 | 19 | me whereby it would not. |
| 13:59:23 | 20 | I I I think it's unlikely again, with |
| 13:59:31 | 21 | the exception of just simply removing the pyridine, if |
| 13:59:35 | 22 | you want to consider that a condition, and the pH might |
| 13:59:39 | 23 | affect precisely where I mean if you're talking 2, |
| 13:59:43 | 24 | 3 percent up here, the pH might impact whether it's |
| 13:59:47 | 25 | 3 percent or 2 percent that is required to denature. |
13:59:51 If you're talking 90 percent pyridine or 1 13:59:53 60 percent pyridine -- and, by the way, Staudinger 2 13:59:56 3 reactions are done in effectively wet pyridine, which 14:00:01 means you have only a little amount of water where, in 4 14:00:03 5 fact, you couldn't even measure a pH because there's not enough water to measure the pH. 14:00:07 6 14:00:10 7 You can't measure a pH -- pH is not defined in 14:00:11 an organic solution, so if you're talking pH, you're 8 14:00:16 9 effectively talking about so little pyridine that it 14:00:18 10 doesn't matter. 14:00:19 11 So under those conditions, DNA might survive, 14:00:22 12 and the details of how it survives might depend a little 14:00:27 13 on pH, but -- so that's why I tend not to consider --14:00:31 14 when you're asking these questions, I'm not really 14:00:33 15 considering pH because it's not defined in an organic solution. 14:00:37 16 14:00:37 17 Q. How about temperature? Can temperature affect 14:00:40 18 whether pyridine will denature DNA? 14:00:42 19 Α. Of course. Yes, sure. 14:00:48 20 To be a little more specific about that, the 14:00:51 21 sorts of -- the sorts of DNA that we're talking about 14:00:55 22 denaturation in this discussion are relatively short 14:01:01 23 pieces of DNA, 21 hybrids, that kind of thing. No temperature is going to protect that to pyridine. 14:01:06 24 14:01:09 25 If you're talking about chromosomal DNA, very

INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD.

| 14:01:12 | 1 | large fragments of DNA that are much, much more stable, |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:01:17 | 2 | then temperature's going to play a role because it is |
| 14:01:19 | 3 | going to be so stable, you're going to have to heat it |
| 14:01:22 | 4 | up a little bit. |
| 14:01:23 | 5 | Q. Now, why is denaturation a problem in an SBS |
| 14:01:29 | 6 | reaction? |
| 14:01:29 | 7 | A. You need to maintain the integrity of the |
| 14:01:32 | 8 | primer templates such that each edition you can be sure |
| 14:01:35 | 9 | is reading successive nucleotides in the template. |
| 14:01:45 | 10 | Q. Even if pyridine denatures DNA, if you then |
| 14:01:50 | 11 | change back to aqueous conditions, won't the DNA |
| 14:01:56 | 12 | reanneal? |
| 14:01:57 | 13 | A. Sure, but maybe not in the same way. So |
| 14:02:00 | 14 | especially with the larger you get, the more likely you |
| 14:02:04 | 15 | are to fall into kinetic traps in reannealing. You |
| 14:02:08 | 16 | would have to cool excessively slowly to make sure that |
| 14:02:12 | 17 | you reanneal correctly, and even then there are all |
| 14:02:16 | 18 | sorts of templates that you need to resequence, things |
| 14:02:18 | 19 | like repeats, things like homopolymeric runs where you |
| 14:02:21 | 20 | wouldn't reanneal correctly. |
| 14:02:24 | 21 | Q. If you look at paragraph 55, again, of your |
| 14:02:28 | 22 | declaration, the first sentence you say "Pyridine was |
| 14:02:34 | 23 | known to be an especially effective DNA denaturing agent |
| 14:02:38 | 24 | in aqueous solutions," and you cite to a Kit reference. |
| 14:02:43 | 25 | Is that right? |
| | | |

| 14:02:44 | 1 | A. Uh-huh, it is. |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:03:03 | 2 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to show you what's been |
| 14:03:05 | 3 | previously marked as 2018, the reference with the author |
| 14:03:11 | 4 | Saul Kit. |
| 14:03:14 | 5 | (Exhibit 2018 was referred to.) |
| 14:03:17 | 6 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 14:03:20 | 7 | Q. Is this the reference that you are citing to in |
| 14:03:23 | 8 | your paragraph 55 of your declaration? |
| 14:03:25 | 9 | A. It would appear to be, yes. |
| 14:03:32 | 10 | Q. Now, Kit's a review article; is that right? |
| 14:03:35 | 11 | A. It is. |
| 14:03:37 | 12 | Q. Now, you quote a sentence from quit Kit in |
| 14:03:43 | 13 | your declaration, 55, if you look on line 3 of your |
| 14:03:47 | 14 | declaration. |
| 14:03:49 | 15 | The quotation is "aromatic reagents, such as |
| 14:03:53 | 16 | phenols and pyridine are especially effective" and then |
| 14:03:56 | 17 | you type in "DNA denaturants." |
| 14:03:59 | 18 | Do you see that? |
| 14:04:00 | 19 | A. I do. |
| 14:04:04 | 20 | Q. And the citation is to page 57 and 58. |
| 14:04:09 | 21 | So if you could turn there, and I believe what |
| 14:04:11 | 22 | you're quoting from is at the very bottom of page 57 and |
| 14:04:21 | 23 | goes on to 58. |
| 14:04:22 | 24 | Is that right? |
| 14:04:23 | 25 | A. It is. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 14:04:26 | 1 | Q. And Kit cites to a reference identified as 252; |
| 14:04:31 | 2 | is that right? |
| 14:04:32 | 3 | A. Correct. |
| 14:04:32 | 4 | Q. So if we flip back to the back of Kit, and we |
| 14:04:36 | 5 | look for reference 252, which is on page 79 towards the |
| 14:04:43 | 6 | bottom in the right-hand column. |
| 14:04:46 | 7 | Do you see that reference? |
| 14:04:48 | 8 | A. I do. |
| 14:04:50 | 9 | Q. Did you review that reference? |
| 14:04:52 | 10 | A. I did. |
| 14:04:52 | 11 | Q. Okay. Do you have a copy of that reference? |
| 14:04:56 | 12 | A. No, I do not. |
| 14:04:59 | 13 | MR. SEGAL: Okay. Counsel, we'd ask that be |
| 14:05:01 | 14 | provided to us. |
| 14:05:04 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: The Gordon reference that's cited |
| 14:05:08 | 16 | in Kit? |
| 14:05:09 | 17 | MR. SEGAL: Yes. |
| 14:05:10 | 18 | MS. SWAROOP: Okay. I'll take a look at it and |
| 14:05:12 | 19 | see. |
| 14:05:13 | 20 | THE WITNESS: I'll end the suspense for you. |
| 14:05:17 | 21 | It ironically contains almost precisely and the |
| 14:05:17 | 22 | reason I didn't include it is it contains essentially |
| 14:05:20 | 23 | exactly the same sentence. |
| 14:05:31 | 24 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 14:05:31 | 25 | Q. You didn't list that in your materials |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|
| 14:05:33 | 1 | reviewed, did you? |
| 14:05:34 | 2 | A. That is correct, I did not. |
| 14:05:41 | 3 | Q. Was that an abstract that you reviewed? |
| 14:05:44 | 4 | A. Yes, it was, and that's part of why I didn't |
| 14:05:46 | 5 | list it. I considered the review to be a better source. |
| 14:05:49 | 6 | Q. And did you look for any follow-up papers by |
| 14:05:52 | 7 | these authors |
| 14:05:56 | 8 | A. I didn't. |
| 14:05:56 | 9 | Q that discussed pyridine and the denaturation |
| 14:05:58 | 10 | of DNA? |
| 14:05:59 | 11 | A. Not specifically for them. I actually looked |
| 14:06:01 | 12 | fairly hard myself for rigorous examples of pyridine |
| 14:06:05 | 13 | denaturation. I did not find by these authors. I |
| 14:06:10 | 14 | didn't explicitly look for them. |
| 14:06:14 | 15 | But I was surprisingly able to find a little |
| 14:06:16 | 16 | example that went in more detail other than "organics |
| 14:06:19 | 17 | denature DNA." I mean it's sort of such a well-known |
| 14:06:22 | 18 | effect and the mechanism is well-known as to why they're |
| 14:06:26 | 19 | all going to denature DNA. |
| 14:06:28 | 20 | And I can explain to you why that's the case if |
| 14:06:30 | 21 | you want me to, but I just found this to be a nice |
| 14:06:36 | 22 | summary of all of that. |
| 14:06:44 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: I'm sorry. I think my question |
| 14:06:46 | 24 | maybe got lost in your answer there. |
| 14:06:49 | 25 | THE WITNESS: No problem. I did not |

| 14:06:50 | 1 | specifically look and find additional reviews by those |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:06:53 | 2 | authors, additional sources by those authors. |
| 14:06:55 | 3 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 14:06:56 | 4 | Q. Okay. Thank you. |
| 14:07:25 | 5 | Turning back to your declaration again, about |
| 14:07:31 | 6 | five lines down starting on the right-hand side you |
| 14:07:33 | 7 | state |
| 14:07:34 | 8 | A. I'm sorry. What page? |
| 14:07:35 | 9 | Q. I'm in paragraph 55 of your declaration, five |
| 14:07:43 | 10 | lines down about, the sentence that starts on that line, |
| 14:07:45 | 11 | "In fact, most organic solvents (including |
| 14:07:49 | 12 | tetrahydrofuran 'THF' and methanol) were known to |
| 14:07:54 | 13 | denature DNA." |
| 14:07:55 | 14 | Do you see that? |
| 14:07:56 | 15 | A. I do. |
| 14:07:56 | 16 | Q. And you cite to a Lee reference |
| 14:07:59 | 17 | A. I do. |
| 14:08:00 | 18 | Q correct? |
| 14:08:19 | 19 | I'm going to hand to you a document that's been |
| 14:08:23 | 20 | previously marked as Exhibit 2021. It's a reference |
| 14:08:28 | 21 | with the first named author, Lee. |
| 14:08:32 | 22 | (Exhibit 2021 was referred to.) |
| 14:08:42 | 23 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 14:08:43 | 24 | Q. Is Exhibit 2021 the reference you are citing to |
| 14:08:48 | 25 | in paragraph 55 of your declaration? |

| 14:08:50 | 1 | A. It is. |
|----------|----|---|
| 14:08:57 | 2 | Q. So if you turn back to your declaration where |
| 14:09:01 | 3 | you cite to Lee, you also quote Lee: "'such unwinding |
| 14:09:09 | 4 | of the DNA duplex caused by dehydration is likely to be |
| 14:09:13 | 5 | a common phenomenon in organic solvents.'" |
| 14:09:19 | 6 | Did I read that right? |
| 14:09:20 | 7 | A. You did. |
| 14:09:29 | 8 | Q. Now, am I correct that Lee is dealing with the |
| 14:09:32 | 9 | supercoiling of DNA helixes? |
| 14:09:34 | 10 | A. Yes. |
| 14:09:35 | 11 | Q. So Lee is not dealing with the denaturation of |
| 14:09:39 | 12 | DNA single strands? |
| 14:09:44 | 13 | A. Those are related processes, but technically |
| 14:09:46 | 14 | correct, yes. |
| 14:09:56 | 15 | Q. And the data provided in Lee does not involve |
| 14:10:00 | 16 | the denaturation of DNA, but is again involved to the |
| 14:10:05 | 17 | involved with the supercoiling of DNA, correct? |
| 14:10:09 | 18 | A. At some point, the linking number will be so |
| 14:10:13 | 19 | small that it will be denatured, and I'm not sure |
| 14:10:16 | 20 | looking at that looking at this data, I'm not sure if |
| 14:10:20 | 21 | he reaches that or not. I'd have to read through this |
| 14:10:23 | 22 | more carefully to see. |
| 14:10:24 | 23 | But if you're unwinding DNA, which is what |
| 14:10:26 | 24 | reducing the linking number means, you're going to be |
| 14:10:30 | 25 | denaturing it, because you're going to be pulling those |

| 14:10:33 | 1 | waters out of the minor and major grooves, and that's |
|----------|----|---|
| 14:10:36 | 2 | what leads to the meltdown, because it reduces the |
| 14:10:40 | 3 | stability. So he's following a process where the |
| 14:10:42 | 4 | stability is being lost. |
| 14:10:44 | 5 | Q. But what he's showing here is the unwinding of |
| 14:10:46 | 6 | the DNA helix, not the denaturation of DNA? |
| 14:10:50 | 7 | A. Yeah, but I believe he has very large pieces of |
| 14:10:53 | 8 | DNA. |
| 14:10:54 | 9 | Q. Can you show me where he talks about the |
| 14:10:56 | 10 | denaturation of the DNA |
| 14:10:58 | 11 | A. No, he doesn't. |
| 14:10:59 | 12 | Q in his results? |
| 14:11:00 | 13 | A. I don't think he does. I mean, I'd have to |
| 14:11:02 | 14 | look more carefully, but what I put this in for was the |
| 14:11:07 | 15 | quote about the dehydration, because that's the |
| 14:11:08 | 16 | mechanism by which you also reduce denaturation. |
| 14:11:14 | 17 | MR. SEGAL: This would be a good time for a |
| 14:11:17 | 18 | break. We can go off for a few minutes. |
| 14:11:21 | 19 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Okay. We are going off |
| 14:11:22 | 20 | the record. This is the end of Disk No. 3. The time is |
| 14:11:25 | 21 | 2:11. |
| 14:11:26 | 22 | (Recess from 2:11 p.m. to 2:33 p.m.) |
| 14:33:24 | 23 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going back on the |
| 14:33:25 | 24 | record. This is the beginning of Disk No. 4. The time |
| 14:33:28 | 25 | is 2:33. |

| 2 | next line of questioning, I just wanted to state one |
|----|--|
| 3 | issue for the record, which is you did mark two new |
| 4 | exhibits at the deposition today, Exhibit 1018 and |
| 5 | Exhibit 1019. |
| 6 | I did object to those depositions [verbatim], |
| 7 | but I also want to additionally object on the grounds |
| 8 | that we believe that it's improper supplemental evidence |
| 9 | submitted outside the time that the Board allows for |
| 10 | supplemental evidence under Rule 42.123, so I just |
| 11 | wanted to make that record with regard to those two |
| 12 | exhibits. |
| 13 | MR. SEGAL: Well, we disagree with that |
| 14 | objection, but it's on the record. |
| 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Thank you. |
| 16 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 17 | Q. If you'll turn back, Dr. Romesberg, to your |
| 18 | declaration, in particular the section beginning with |
| 19 | paragraph 59, page 34. |
| 20 | I believe it's your opinion in this section |
| 21 | that the '537 patent satisfied a long-felt need in |
| 22 | sequencing. |
| 23 | Is that right? |
| 24 | A. Yes. |
| 25 | Q. And I believe if you look at paragraph 60, that |
| | 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 |

| 14:34:46 | 1 | the long-felt need that you're describing is a need for |
|----------|----|---|
| 14:34:50 | 2 | a fast and efficient SBS method. |
| 14:34:54 | 3 | Is that right? |
| 14:34:55 | 4 | A. Yes. I guess I |
| 14:35:02 | 5 | Q. What do you mean |
| 14:35:02 | 6 | A. Sorry. |
| 14:35:02 | 7 | Q. What do you mean by "fast"? |
| 14:35:05 | 8 | A. That's what I was about to qualify. |
| 14:35:07 | 9 | Q. Okay. |
| 14:35:08 | 10 | A. I would say fast and efficient meaning |
| 14:35:10 | 11 | sufficient to sequence genomes, and I think at the time |
| 14:35:14 | 12 | that this this work represented significant progress |
| 14:35:19 | 13 | towards that. |
| 14:35:22 | 14 | Q. And when you say "fast," are you talking about |
| 14:35:26 | 15 | fast incorporation? |
| 14:35:29 | 16 | A. No. I'm talking about the overall, the |
| 14:35:31 | 17 | sequencing reaction. So generally I think when I refer |
| 14:35:34 | 18 | to that, I'm referring to the step that limits the |
| 14:35:37 | 19 | overall process, so that would tend to be the |
| 14:35:40 | 20 | deprotection step. |
| 14:35:42 | 21 | Q. So you would need at least, though, the fast |
| 14:35:45 | 22 | incorporation to have a fast and efficient SBS method? |
| 14:35:49 | 23 | A. Sure. I mean it's if your incorporation |
| 14:35:52 | 24 | step were required more time than your deprotection |
| 14:35:55 | 25 | step, then that would be the step that limited the |

| Deposition of Flo | oyd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| 14:35:58 | 1 | overall time required. |
| 14:36:04 | 2 | Q. And you've already mentioned that by "fast," |
| 14:36:07 | 3 | fast also includes fast cleavage of the protecting |
| 14:36:12 | 4 | group; is that right? |
| 14:36:13 | 5 | A. Correct. |
| 14:36:14 | 6 | Q. And the fast and efficient SBS method would |
| 14:36:19 | 7 | also require a fast cleavage of the label; is that |
| 14:36:22 | 8 | correct? |
| 14:36:24 | 9 | A. That is also correct. |
| 14:36:26 | 10 | Q. And for a fast and efficient SBS method, you |
| 14:36:30 | 11 | would also need a fast method for detecting the label; |
| 14:36:34 | 12 | is that right? |
| 14:36:36 | 13 | A. Sure. I mean to the extent that any of those |
| 14:36:40 | 14 | became the slowest step, they will limit the sequencing |
| 14:36:43 | 15 | reaction; and, like I said, the ballpark number that I |
| 14:36:49 | 16 | have in my head is things are obviously much better |
| 14:36:53 | 17 | than this today, but I think in 2002 the expectation |
| 14:36:56 | 18 | would have been that you better be getting to something |
| 14:36:58 | 19 | on the order of an hour overall per base read. |
| 14:37:02 | 20 | So if anything limited that, then it would |
| 14:37:05 | 21 | require that so obviously that requires every step to |
| 14:37:09 | 22 | fit within that time period. |
| 14:37:11 | 23 | Q. Now, if I could turn to, what do you mean by |
| 14:37:14 | 24 | "efficient," when you say fast and efficient SBS method? |
| 14:37:19 | 25 | A. So there's sort of different but they are |

| 14:37:22 | 1 | certainly related. A reaction you could have a |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:37:25 | 2 | reaction that was efficient, meaning it went to very |
| 14:37:28 | 3 | high yield but that it took multiple hours or took a |
| 14:37:31 | 4 | very long time; or you could have something that was |
| 14:37:33 | 5 | very fast, but it was inherently limited to 80 percent |
| 14:37:37 | 6 | or 85 percent or something, so it would be fast but not |
| 14:37:40 | 7 | efficient. |
| 14:37:41 | 8 | So fast and efficient, how usually things |
| 14:37:44 | 9 | that are fast are also efficient, but they don't have to |
| 14:37:48 | 10 | be, so being saying "fast and efficient" makes sure |
| 14:37:52 | 11 | that you're covering both of those things. |
| 14:37:56 | 12 | Q. Would the efficiency also include the |
| 14:37:59 | 13 | efficiency of incorporation of a nucleotide; is that |
| 14:38:02 | 14 | right? |
| 14:38:03 | 15 | A. To the extent that that step limited things, |
| 14:38:06 | 16 | then sure. The nucleotide has to be efficiently |
| 14:38:09 | 17 | incorporated. |
| 14:38:11 | 18 | Q. And it would also include things like the |
| 14:38:14 | 19 | cleavage efficiency of the protecting group; is that |
| 14:38:16 | 20 | right? |
| 14:38:17 | 21 | A. Correct. |
| 14:38:18 | 22 | Q. And it would include the cleavage efficiency of |
| 14:38:23 | 23 | the label; is that correct? |
| 14:38:25 | 24 | A. The so I believe I just answered these exact |
| 14:38:27 | 25 | questions a second ago, but I would add that the errors |

| 14:38:30 | 1 | associated with cleavage of the fluorophore, of the |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:38:35 | 2 | linker, are rather different than the errors associated |
| 14:38:37 | 3 | with cleavage of the protecting group at the sugar. |
| 14:38:41 | 4 | They are rather more stringent at the sugar. |
| 14:38:44 | 5 | Q. If you'll turn to paragraph 66 of your |
| 14:38:58 | 6 | declaration, you'll see the heading right above |
| 14:39:10 | 7 | paragraph 66 says "Unexpected Results Support The |
| 14:39:13 | 8 | Nonobviousness of the Claims." |
| 14:39:15 | 9 | Did I read that right? |
| 14:39:17 | 10 | A. You did. |
| 14:39:18 | 11 | Q. Now, is it your opinion that the azidomethyl |
| 14:39:21 | 12 | group has unexpected properties over prior art |
| 14:39:26 | 13 | protecting groups for a 3' hydroxyl of nucleotides? |
| 14:39:31 | 14 | A. Yes. |
| 14:39:40 | 15 | Q. Now, if you look at paragraph 67, and in |
| 14:39:46 | 16 | particular for the last couple lines of that paragraph, |
| 14:39:50 | 17 | I just want to direct your attention to that and I'm |
| 14:39:52 | 18 | going to ask you a question. |
| 14:39:54 | 19 | The unexpected property with respect to the |
| 14:39:59 | 20 | azidomethyl, is it your opinion that the property is the |
| 14:40:03 | 21 | ability to be cleaved more rapidly and efficiently? |
| 14:40:06 | 22 | A. That is the most obvious unexpected result, |
| 14:40:09 | 23 | yes; the most obvious unexpected property. |
| 14:40:16 | 24 | Q. And that's the property for which you review |
| 14:40:20 | 25 | the experimental data that was provided to you by |

| 14:40:23 | 1 | Illumina; is that right? |
|----------|----|---|
| 14:40:25 | 2 | A. That's correct. |
| 14:40:31 | 3 | Q. Now, in this section, you compare the removal |
| 14:40:34 | 4 | of the azidomethyl protecting group with the removal of |
| 14:40:40 | 5 | an allyl protecting group; is that right? |
| 14:40:42 | 6 | A. That's correct. |
| 14:40:44 | 7 | Q. Did you compare the azidomethyl protecting |
| 14:40:46 | 8 | group removal rate and efficiency to any other |
| 14:40:51 | 9 | protecting groups? |
| 14:40:55 | 10 | A. No. |
| 14:40:57 | 11 | Q. Now, in this section, you discuss and reference |
| 14:41:03 | 12 | notebook pages provided to you by Illumina; is that |
| 14:41:06 | 13 | correct? |
| 14:41:07 | 14 | A. That is correct. |
| 14:41:08 | 15 | Q. Now, did you review the entire notebooks from |
| 14:41:11 | 16 | which these pages come from? |
| 14:41:14 | 17 | A. No, I did not. |
| 14:41:16 | 18 | Q. Did you ask if Illumina had conducted any other |
| 14:41:19 | 19 | experiments regarding the cleavage of an allyl |
| 14:41:23 | 20 | protecting group? |
| 14:41:24 | 21 | A. No, I did not. |
| 14:41:26 | 22 | Q. Did you ask Illumina if it had conducted any |
| 14:41:30 | 23 | other experiments regarding the cleavage of an |
| 14:41:33 | 24 | azidomethyl protecting group? |
| 14:41:35 | 25 | A. I've had no communications with Illumina so, |

| 14:41:37 | 1 | no, I did not ask that. |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:41:41 | 2 | Q. Did you ask your attorneys for other data with |
| 14:41:45 | 3 | regard to the cleavage of allyl protecting groups? |
| 14:41:51 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, you're getting into |
| 14:41:52 | 5 | subject matter of communications with counsel. |
| 14:41:54 | 6 | So, Dr. Romesberg, I instruct you not to answer |
| 14:41:57 | 7 | that. |
| 14:41:58 | 8 | You can ask him generally what he considered, |
| 14:42:00 | 9 | but to the extent you're asking him about specific |
| 14:42:02 | 10 | communications, that's privileged and we're not going to |
| 14:42:05 | 11 | permit testimony on communications. |
| 14:42:06 | 12 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 14:42:06 | 13 | Q. Other than the couple experiments that you |
| 14:42:09 | 14 | discuss in this section, did you rely on anything else |
| 14:42:14 | 15 | for your conclusion that the azidomethyl group has |
| 14:42:17 | 16 | unexpected properties? |
| 14:42:29 | 17 | A. Yeah, I'm not sure I know how to answer this |
| 14:42:31 | 18 | question. |
| 14:42:32 | 19 | Kind of yes; and kind of yes, for example, the |
| 14:42:37 | 20 | nature paper that Illumina published, that's the the |
| 14:42:40 | 21 | first author's Bentley. I believe it's already in |
| 14:42:45 | 22 | what do you call it? entered into evidence it |
| 14:42:50 | 23 | works. It works amazingly. It uses no allyl, and they |
| 14:42:55 | 24 | sequenced a genome. This caught the scientific world |
| 14:43:01 | 25 | totally off guard. |

| 14:43:02 | 1 | Q. Other than the Bentley article |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:43:04 | 2 | A. And the fact that |
| 14:43:04 | 3 | Q and the notebook pages that you discussed in |
| 14:43:08 | 4 | your declaration, are you relying on anything else to |
| 14:43:11 | 5 | support your opinion that the azidomethyl group shows |
| 14:43:16 | 6 | unexpected results? |
| 14:43:18 | 7 | A. Just to be clear, this is related to the |
| 14:43:20 | 8 | Bentley paper. The fact that you can sequence what they |
| 14:43:23 | 9 | achieve implies that the cleavage efficiencies are |
| 14:43:29 | 10 | outlandishly high; north of 99 percent, north of |
| 14:43:33 | 11 | 99.9 percent or something. |
| 14:43:54 | 12 | Q. Did you search the literature to look for any |
| 14:43:56 | 13 | other data regarding the cleavage of a 3' oxygen allyl |
| 14:44:01 | 14 | protecting group? |
| 14:44:04 | 15 | A. Not explicitly. I know Ju's work. He's as |
| 14:44:10 | 16 | I think I've established, I think it's well known he |
| 14:44:12 | 17 | works in a field that's not so distant from what I work |
| 14:44:16 | 18 | in, so that I know his work, and I think reading the |
| 14:44:18 | 19 | literature over the years I'm vaguely familiar with this |
| 14:44:22 | 20 | stuff. |
| 14:44:22 | 21 | And I would have I mean I always had sort of |
| 14:44:25 | 22 | an impression as to where the field stood, and so it |
| 14:44:30 | 23 | would be that sort of knowledge in addition to what |
| 14:44:33 | 24 | Illumina provided me that also contributed. |
| 14:44:37 | 25 | And, I'm sorry. I don't have |

| 14:44:39 | 1 | Q. I don't think that was quite answering my |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:44:41 | 2 | question. |
| 14:44:41 | 3 | Did you look at any data from any other |
| 14:44:44 | 4 | references or literature regarding the cleavage |
| 14:44:48 | 5 | efficiency of a 3' hydroxyl protecting group using the |
| 14:44:53 | 6 | allyl protecting group? |
| 14:44:54 | 7 | A. Yes. What I mean is that Ju has been |
| 14:44:56 | 8 | publishing this for a while, and I I assume that I've |
| 14:45:00 | 9 | read most of his papers. Most of that was a long time |
| 14:45:03 | 10 | ago, so it's left a general impression on me and I did |
| 14:45:07 | 11 | not go consult them for this declaration or in |
| 14:45:09 | 12 | preparation for this deposition, but I that did |
| 14:45:13 | 13 | inform my opinion. |
| 14:45:34 | 14 | Q. Look at paragraph 75. That first sentence |
| 14:45:42 | 15 | there, I believe you're summarizing the previous |
| 14:45:45 | 16 | discussion of the allyl experiments. |
| 14:45:47 | 17 | And you say "In my opinion, these notebook |
| 14:45:51 | 18 | pages report that even under optimized conditions, |
| 14:45:54 | 19 | long periods are required to achieve 3' oxygen |
| 14:46:00 | 20 | allyl protecting group cleavage efficiencies that are |
| 14:46:02 | 21 | sufficient for SBS." |
| 14:46:04 | 22 | Is that right? |
| 14:46:05 | 23 | A. I do say that, yes. |
| 14:46:07 | 24 | Q. So you used the term "optimized conditions." |
| 14:46:13 | 25 | So what has been optimized through the series |

| 14:46:18 | 1 | of allyl cleavage experiments that you reviewed? |
|----------|----|--|
| 14:46:23 | 2 | A. I believe that different phosphines were used |
| 14:46:26 | 3 | and I think different palladium sources were used. I |
| 14:46:34 | 4 | would have to look through, and it's been a little while |
| 14:46:37 | 5 | since I read this, but I think different additives and |
| 14:46:40 | 6 | maybe different temperatures. |
| 14:46:51 | 7 | Do you want me to come through and come up with |
| 14:46:53 | 8 | a more accurate assessment of what I was writing at |
| 14:46:55 | 9 | the |
| 14:46:56 | 10 | Q. I don't think that's necessary right at this |
| 14:46:58 | 11 | moment. |
| 14:47:12 | 12 | Why don't we go look at these experiments. |
| 14:47:16 | 13 | Why don't you take your time I mean, you did |
| 14:47:19 | 14 | review your declaration before this deposition? |
| 14:47:21 | 15 | A. Yes. |
| 14:47:22 | 16 | Q. Why don't you take your time right now to look |
| 14:47:25 | 17 | through the paragraphs in this section leading up to |
| 14:47:30 | 18 | paragraph 75, and let me know if your answer changes. |
| 14:47:35 | 19 | A. Okay. So the answer to that question, how they |
| 14:47:38 | 20 | optimized? |
| 14:47:40 | 21 | Q. Yes. |
| 14:47:42 | 22 | A. Okay. |
| 14:48:31 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, while Dr. Romesberg is |
| 14:48:33 | 24 | reviewing the portions that you asked him to review, I |
| 14:48:36 | 25 | just want to note that this portion of his declaration |

| 14:48:38 | 1 | was designated as confidential, so to the extent we're |
|----------|----|---|
| 14:48:42 | 2 | going to be discussing the specific notebook pages, I'd |
| 14:48:45 | 3 | like to mark the deposition as confidential. |
| 14:48:48 | 4 | (Confidential section begins.) |
| 14:48:48 | 5 | -000- |
| | 6 | |
| | 7 | |
| | 8 | |
| | 9 | |
| | 10 | |
| | 11 | |
| | 12 | |
| | 13 | |
| | 14 | |
| | 15 | |
| | 16 | |
| | 17 | |
| | 18 | |
| | 19 | |
| | 20 | |
| | 21 | |
| | 22 | |
| | 23 | |
| | 24 | |
| | 25 | |

| Deposition of Floyd | l Romesberg, Ph.D | . INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| 14:58:06 | 1 | MR. SEGAL: I think if we can go on a break, I |
| 14:58:08 | 2 may be | almost finished. |
| 14:58:10 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Okay. |
| 14:58:11 | 4 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going off the |
| 14:58:12 | 5 record | . The time is 2:58. |
| 14:58:14 | 6 | (Recess from 2:58 p.m. to 4:32 p.m.) |
| 16:32:51 | 7 | (Mr. Taylor, Ph.D., Esq., enters the deposition |
| 16:32:51 | 8 | proceedings.) |
| 16:32:54 | 9 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going back on the |
| 16:32:55 1 | 10 record | . The time is 4:32. |
| 16:32:58 1 | BY MR. | SEGAL: |
| 16:32:59 1 | L2 Q. | Now, Dr. Romesberg, earlier we were talking |
| 16:33:01 1 | 13 about | the Kit reference, which is Exhibit 2018 and, in |
| 16:33:08 1 | 14 partic | ular, the sentence in Kit that you quoted in your |
| 16:33:14 1 | 15 declar | ation that's on page 57 and 58. |
| 16:33:17 1 | L6 | Do you remember that? |
| 16:33:18 1 | L7 A. | I do. |
| 16:33:19 1 | L8 Q. | And Kit cites to reference 252 and, as you |
| 16:33:26 1 | 19 recall | , the 252 reference is referring to a an |
| 16:33:32 2 | 20 abstra | ct with the author Gordon. |
| 16:33:35 2 | 21 | Is that right? |
| 16:33:36 2 | 22 A. | Uh-huh, uh-huh. |
| 16:33:37 2 | 23 Q. | And you testified earlier that you had reviewed |
| 16:33:39 2 | 24 that r | eference. |
| 16:33:40 2 | 25 | Is that right? |

| 16:33:41 | 1 | A. Uh-huh, yes, that's right. |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:33:44 | 2 | MR. SEGAL: I'm just going to mark as |
| 16:33:45 | 3 | Exhibit 1020 an abstract with the first named author |
| 16:33:54 | 4 | Gordon, and it's from the Biophysical Society, Sixth |
| 16:34:03 | 5 | Annual Meeting. |
| 16:34:05 | 6 | (Exhibit 1020 was marked for identification.) |
| 16:34:09 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: I don't have one |
| 16:34:10 | 8 | MS. SWAROOP: I thought we made oh, okay. |
| 16:34:12 | 9 | And it's Exhibit 1020? |
| 16:34:15 | 10 | BY MR. SEGAL: |
| 16:34:15 | 11 | Q. I just want to confirm that this is actually |
| 16:34:18 | 12 | this is the abstract you were talking about earlier when |
| 16:34:21 | 13 | you said you reviewed the abstract referenced in as |
| 16:34:24 | 14 | 252 in Kit. |
| 16:34:26 | 15 | A. Yes. |
| 16:34:29 | 16 | MR. SEGAL: Okay. Dr. Romesberg, thank you for |
| 16:34:30 | 17 | your time. I have no further questions. |
| 16:34:34 | 18 | |
| 16:34:34 | 19 | EXAMINATION |
| 16:34:34 | 20 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:34:35 | 21 | Q. Okay. Dr. Romesberg, I do have a few questions |
| 16:34:37 | 22 | for you. |
| 16:34:45 | 23 | So during cross, counsel had asked you about |
| 16:34:48 | 24 | the Staudinger ligation. |
| 16:34:51 | 25 | Do you recall that? |

| 16:34:52 | 1 | A. I do. |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:34:52 | 2 | Q. Can you explain what a Staudinger ligation is. |
| 16:34:55 | 3 | A. Sure. So just this unlike the Staudinger |
| 16:35:00 | 4 | reaction, where the leaving group is essentially |
| 16:35:03 | 5 | transferred to water so you get the leaving group |
| 16:35:06 | 6 | departs with the hydroxyl group, the Staudinger ligation |
| 16:35:12 | 7 | intercepts that intermediate with a nucleophile that's |
| 16:35:16 | 8 | not water, but instead is attached to a linker; and as a |
| 16:35:20 | 9 | result, that results in your leaving group not being |
| 16:35:23 | 10 | hydrolyzed and free but, in fact, being attached to |
| 16:35:27 | 11 | something else, a linker, and that's why it's called a |
| 16:35:31 | 12 | ligation. |
| 16:35:32 | 13 | Q. Okay. And if you were to use Staudinger |
| 16:35:34 | 14 | ligation on an azido-blocked nucleotide, would the |
| 16:35:39 | 15 | Staudinger ligation result in a free 3' hydroxyl? |
| 16:35:44 | 16 | A. No, it would not. |
| 16:35:45 | 17 | MR. SEGAL: Object. Outside the scope of my |
| 16:35:48 | 18 | cross examination. I did not ask him about Staudinger |
| 16:35:50 | 19 | ligation. |
| 16:35:52 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: We disagree with that, but I'll |
| 16:35:54 | 21 | move on to the next line of questions. |
| 16:35:58 | 22 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:35:58 | 23 | Q. If you can turn to the Tsien reference, which I |
| 16:36:02 | 24 | believe is Exhibit 1008, counsel had asked you some |
| 16:36:21 | 25 | questions on page 21 of the reference. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | esberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBR | IDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|------------|
| 16:36:31 | 1 | I'm sorry. Exhibit 1008, Tsien. | |
| 16:36:36 | 2 | I think you have Ju. | |
| 16:36:37 | 3 | A. Oh, I'm sorry. | |
| 16:36:38 | 4 | Q. That's okay. I just had it. | |
| 16:36:47 | 5 | THE REPORTER: Counsel, may we go off the | |
| 16:36:49 | 6 | record? | |
| 16:36:51 | 7 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Do you want to go off | ? |
| 16:36:52 | 8 | MS. SWAROOP: Sure. | |
| 16:36:53 | 9 | MR. SEGAL: Sure. | |
| 16:36:54 | 10 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Okay. Off the record | ι. |
| 16:36:54 | 11 | The time is 4:36. | |
| 16:37:18 | 12 | (Discussion off the record.) | |
| 16:37:24 | 13 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are back on the re | cord. |
| 16:37:25 | 14 | The time is 4:36 7. | |
| 16:37:31 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Okay. So the court reporter | • |
| 16:37:32 | 16 | asked us to make clear when we went off the confide | ntial |
| 16:37:36 | 17 | portion of the record. | |
| 16:37:36 | 18 | So there was a series of questions to | |
| 16:37:39 | 19 | Dr. Romesberg with regard to the Illumina notebook | pages |
| 16:37:42 | 20 | and then we broke at that point, so the confidentia | .1 |
| 16:37:45 | 21 | portion would end at that point, and we're now on t | .he |
| 16:37:47 | 22 | public record. | |
| 16:37:48 | 23 | BY MS. SWAROOP: | |
| 16:37:48 | 24 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, I was asking about the Tsie | n |
| 16:37:50 | 25 | reference, Exhibit 1008, and in particular page 21. | |

| 16:37:56 | 1 | A. Top number |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:37:57 | 2 | Q. Top number. |
| 16:37:59 | 3 | A. Got it. |
| 16:38:00 | 4 | Q. And you had testified that the azido group is |
| 16:38:04 | 5 | an irreversible terminator. |
| 16:38:07 | 6 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:38:08 | 7 | A. In the context of what Tsien's describing, yes. |
| 16:38:11 | 8 | Q. And can you explain why? |
| 16:38:13 | 9 | A. Tsien is using them to support the |
| 16:38:15 | 10 | incorporability of modified nucleotides, and he lists a |
| 16:38:19 | 11 | variety including the fluorine and the amino group and |
| 16:38:23 | 12 | an azide, for example, amongst several others, all of |
| 16:38:27 | 13 | which could not be attached to an oxygen of the |
| 16:38:29 | 14 | nucleotide. It would be chemically not possible for |
| 16:38:32 | 15 | them to be. |
| 16:38:33 | 16 | And they're in fact, well-known examples from |
| 16:38:36 | 17 | C3 directly attached to C3 nucleotides as reverse |
| 16:38:40 | 18 | which act as irreversible terminators, and he cites |
| 16:38:45 | 19 | Kraevskii, which explicitly shows them attached directly |
| 16:38:50 | 20 | to the C3 carbon. |
| 16:38:52 | 21 | So they're not reversible terminators; they're |
| 16:38:57 | 22 | irreversible terminators. |
| 16:38:58 | 23 | Q. Okay. And if the azido was reduced to an |
| 16:39:01 | 24 | amine, would it still be an irreversible terminator? |
| 16:39:05 | 25 | A. It would, yes. |

| 16:39:06 | 1 | Q. So would you agree that the azido serves the |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:39:09 | 2 | same function whether or not it gets reduced by the |
| 16:39:13 | 3 | polymerase? |
| 16:39:14 | 4 | A. Yes. |
| 16:39:18 | 5 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, if something were to work well |
| 16:39:21 | 6 | in oligonucleotides manufacturing, does that necessarily |
| 16:39:26 | 7 | mean it would work well for sequencing by synthesis? |
| 16:39:29 | 8 | A. No, it does not. |
| 16:39:31 | 9 | MR. SEGAL: Object to the form of the question. |
| 16:39:38 | 10 | And, again, I'll also object to it's outside |
| 16:39:41 | 11 | the scope of my cross examination. |
| 16:39:43 | 12 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:39:44 | 13 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, you were asked during your |
| 16:39:47 | 14 | deposition about, I think, synthetic chemistry papers. |
| 16:39:51 | 15 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:39:52 | 16 | A. I was, yes. |
| 16:39:53 | 17 | Q. Okay. |
| 16:39:54 | 18 | A. I do. |
| 16:39:54 | 19 | Q. And is it reasonable for someone looking to |
| 16:39:56 | 20 | develop an SBS method, to consult synthetic chemistry |
| 16:40:00 | 21 | papers? |
| 16:40:01 | 22 | A. Yes, it is. |
| 16:40:02 | 23 | Q. Does that and does it depend upon what's |
| 16:40:05 | 24 | disclosed in those papers? |
| 16:40:07 | 25 | A. Yeah. So I mean if I were looking to develop a |

| 16:40:09 | 1 | sequencing-by-synthesis method, I would certainly |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:40:12 | 2 | consult synthetic chemistry papers that showed things |
| 16:40:17 | 3 | like efficiency of protecting group cleavage, I would |
| 16:40:20 | 4 | look at the conditions that were explored to see if they |
| 16:40:23 | 5 | were compatible with sequencing by synthesis, and I |
| 16:40:26 | 6 | would look at yield to see if they were compatible with |
| 16:40:29 | 7 | the high efficiencies required for sequencing by |
| 16:40:33 | 8 | synthesis. |
| 16:40:34 | 9 | Q. And if the conditions disclosed in a particular |
| 16:40:34 | 10 | reference were incompatible with sequencing by |
| 16:40:37 | 11 | synthesis, would there be any expectation of success? |
| 16:40:41 | 12 | A. That would not provide an expectation of |
| 16:40:43 | 13 | success. |
| 16:40:57 | 14 | Q. I'd like to ask you a few questions about the |
| 16:41:01 | 15 | Zavgorodny reference, if you could pull that exhibit |
| 16:41:04 | 16 | out. It's 1004. |
| 16:41:16 | 17 | Dr. Romesberg, does Zavgorodny disclose any |
| 16:41:20 | 18 | conditions other than triphenylphosphine phosphine in |
| 16:41:24 | 19 | aqueous pyridine at 20 degrees Celsius for removal of |
| 16:41:30 | 20 | its azidomethyl group? |
| 16:41:32 | 21 | MR. SEGAL: Objection. Outside the scope of my |
| 16:41:34 | 22 | cross. |
| 16:41:34 | 23 | THE WITNESS: No. Those are the conditions |
| 16:41:36 | 24 | that he suggests for cleaving these the azidomethyl |
| 16:41:42 | 25 | group. |

| 16:41:42 | 1 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
|----------|----|---|
| 16:41:43 | 2 | Q. Does Zavgorodny suggest any other conditions |
| 16:41:47 | 3 | other than triphenylphosphine in aqueous pyridine at 20 |
| 16:41:51 | 4 | degrees Celsius for removal of its azidomethyl group? |
| 16:41:55 | 5 | MR. SEGAL: Same objection. |
| 16:41:55 | 6 | THE WITNESS: No, he does not. |
| 16:41:56 | 7 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:41:57 | 8 | Q. Okay. And if you look at the last two lines on |
| 16:42:00 | 9 | page 7595 of Zavgorodny |
| 16:42:07 | 10 | A. Yes. |
| 16:42:07 | 11 | Q there's a reference to removal under very |
| 16:42:10 | 12 | specific and mild conditions viz v-i-z with |
| 16:42:17 | 13 | triphenylphosphine phosphine in aqueous pyridine at 20 |
| 16:42:21 | 14 | degrees Celsius. |
| 16:42:23 | 15 | Do you see that? |
| 16:42:24 | 16 | A. I do. |
| 16:42:25 | 17 | Q. What does the word "viz." mean to you? |
| 16:42:27 | 18 | MR. SEGAL: Objection. Outside the scope. I |
| 16:42:29 | 19 | didn't ask him what "viz." means. |
| 16:42:31 | 20 | MS. SWAROOP: You asked whether there was an |
| 16:42:32 | 21 | example in Zavgorodny, and I'm asking him whether there |
| 16:42:36 | 22 | are any other conditions other than the particular |
| 16:42:37 | 23 | condition here, so it's well within the scope of your |
| 16:42:40 | 24 | cross. |
| 16:42:41 | 25 | MR. SEGAL: My objection stands. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|---|
| 16:42:42 | 1 | THE WITNESS: "Viz." means "namely." It does |
| 16:42:45 | 2 | not mean, "for example." |
| 16:42:49 | 3 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:42:49 | 4 | Q. All right. Now, Dr. Romesberg, you were asked |
| 16:42:52 | 5 | some questions about the Staudinger reaction. |
| 16:42:54 | 6 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:42:56 | 7 | A. I do. |
| 16:42:56 | 8 | Q. Okay. Does temperature have any effect on the |
| 16:42:59 | 9 | efficiency of the Staudinger reaction? |
| 16:43:01 | 10 | A. Yes. Like all reactions, they'll be more |
| 16:43:04 | 11 | efficient at higher temperature and less efficient at |
| 16:43:07 | 12 | lower temperature. |
| 16:43:13 | 13 | Q. You were also asked some questions about |
| 16:43:16 | 14 | denaturing of DNA. |
| 16:43:19 | 15 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:43:20 | 16 | A. Yes, I do. |
| 16:43:20 | 17 | Q. Would you expect DNA to be denatured at |
| 16:43:24 | 18 | 20 degrees Celsius in aqueous pyridine sufficient to |
| 16:43:29 | 19 | solubilize triphenylphosphine? |
| 16:43:31 | 20 | MR. SEGAL: Object. Outside the scope of my |
| 16:43:33 | 21 | cross examination. |
| 16:43:34 | 22 | THE WITNESS: That depends on the DNA. Large |
| 16:43:36 | 23 | pieces of DNA, like chromosomal DNA or maybe even plasma |
| 16:43:40 | 24 | DNA, at 20 degrees in pyridine might actually not, |
| 16:43:45 | 25 | although it might be denatured; but certainly primer |

| 16:43:48 | 1 | templates of the sort used in sequencing by synthesis |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:43:51 | 2 | would be denatured at 20 degrees in pyridine. |
| 16:43:55 | 3 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:43:55 | 4 | Q. Can you explain why? |
| 16:43:57 | 5 | A. Well, because they're already not very stable. |
| 16:44:00 | 6 | They're only marginally stable because they're |
| 16:44:03 | 7 | reasonably short. |
| 16:44:05 | 8 | When you have a chromosome, you have millions |
| 16:44:06 | 9 | of base pairs, like in some of the examples we talked |
| 16:44:09 | 10 | about here where they were looking at denaturation, they |
| 16:44:10 | 11 | were using, for example, the genome of T4 |
| 16:44:16 | 12 | THE REPORTER: Sir |
| 16:44:16 | 13 | THE WITNESS: In several of the examples here, |
| 16:44:16 | 14 | they were using chromosomal DNA from T4 phage. It's a |
| 16:44:21 | 15 | type of phage. It's millions of base pairs, so you have |
| 16:44:24 | 16 | all that stability that the pyridines have to compete |
| 16:44:27 | 17 | with. The pyridine will certainly denature it, but you |
| 16:44:31 | 18 | might have to go to a slightly higher temperature. |
| 16:44:34 | 19 | You don't sequence by synthesis with millions |
| 16:44:37 | 20 | of base pairs of hybridization. You have primer |
| 16:44:40 | 21 | templates that have 20 nucleotides, maybe 30, something |
| 16:44:43 | 22 | like that at the beginning; maybe you get up to 100 if |
| 16:44:47 | 23 | your read lengths are good, or maybe longer, but you |
| 16:44:50 | 24 | don't get anywhere near the sorts of lengths that would |
| 16:44:53 | 25 | be required to with stand a significant amount of |

| 16:44:58 | 1 | pyridine. |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:44:59 | 2 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, you testified that approximately |
| 16:45:01 | 3 | 25 base pairs would be needed for sequencing by |
| 16:45:04 | 4 | synthesis. |
| 16:45:05 | 5 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:45:06 | 6 | A. Yes, I do. |
| 16:45:07 | 7 | Q. Why is that? |
| 16:45:08 | 8 | A. That's the length that you need to uniquely |
| 16:45:12 | 9 | place a sequence within a genome, so you need it to |
| 16:45:15 | 10 | assemble the genome from the sequences that you're going |
| 16:45:18 | 11 | to get by sequencing by synthesis. |
| 16:45:21 | 12 | Q. If you were looking for a single nucleotide |
| 16:45:25 | 13 | polymorphism using a sequencing-by-synthesis method, |
| 16:45:28 | 14 | what minimum read length would you need? |
| 16:45:31 | 15 | A. It's not |
| 16:45:33 | 16 | MR. SEGAL: Objection. You've got to give me a |
| 16:45:34 | 17 | second to object. |
| 16:45:35 | 18 | Objection. Outside the scope of the cross. |
| 16:45:38 | 19 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:45:38 | 20 | Q. You can answer. |
| 16:45:39 | 21 | A. It would not change, because the SNIP |
| 16:45:41 | 22 | identification comes from the assembled genome, so you |
| 16:45:45 | 23 | still need to assemble the genome, you still need to |
| 16:45:48 | 24 | place the sequence within the genome to know whether or |
| 16:45:50 | 25 | not a specific nucleotide is a SNIP. So the SNIP is |

| 16:45:54 | 1 | determined after you assemble the genome, so it doesn't |
|----------|----|--|
| 16:45:57 | 2 | change anything. |
| 16:45:58 | 3 | Q. Okay. And you referred to SNIP in your |
| 16:46:00 | 4 | response. |
| 16:46:01 | 5 | Is that an acronym for single nucleotide |
| 16:46:04 | 6 | polymorphism? |
| 16:46:05 | 7 | A. It is. |
| 16:46:05 | 8 | Q. Okay. Now, counsel asked you some questions |
| 16:46:09 | 9 | about claim 1 of the '537 patent, so if you can pull out |
| 16:46:13 | 10 | that exhibit. I believe it's Exhibit 1002. |
| 16:46:16 | 11 | I'm sorry. 1001. Yes. |
| 16:46:39 | 12 | So counsel asked you about claim 1, and in your |
| 16:46:43 | 13 | response to referred to claim 8. |
| 16:46:45 | 14 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:46:46 | 15 | A. I do. |
| 16:46:46 | 16 | Q. Can you explain why claim 8 is important to |
| 16:46:50 | 17 | you? |
| 16:46:50 | 18 | MR. SEGAL: Objection. Outside the scope. I |
| 16:46:52 | 19 | didn't ask him any questions about claim 8. You can't |
| 16:46:54 | 20 | put on the record new testimony. |
| 16:46:57 | 21 | MS. SWAROOP: I disagree. He referred to |
| 16:46:58 | 22 | claim 8 in his response, so I'm certainly entitled to |
| 16:47:01 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: So? |
| 16:47:01 | 24 | MS. SWAROOP: I'm certainly entitled to |
| 16:47:01 | 25 | MR. SEGAL: I didn't ask him questions about |

| Deposition of Flo | yd Ro | mesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-------------------|-------|---|
| 16:47:03 | 1 | claim 8. It's within the scope of my cross examination. |
| 16:47:06 | 2 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:47:06 | 3 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, can you explain why claim 8 is |
| 16:47:08 | 4 | important to you. |
| 16:47:10 | 5 | A. Claim 8 is what identifies the method described |
| 16:47:13 | 6 | as the sequencing-by-synthesis method, and implicit in |
| 16:47:17 | 7 | claim 8 is efficient cleavage. |
| 16:47:20 | 8 | Q. What specifically about claim 8 |
| 16:47:24 | 9 | A. Well, it says "Detecting the detectable label |
| 16:47:27 | 10 | and cleaving the cleavable linker" sorry. |
| 16:47:30 | 11 | "Detecting the detectable label and cleaving |
| 16:47:34 | 12 | the cleavable linker." |
| 16:47:43 | 13 | Q. Counsel asked you some questions about your |
| 16:47:45 | 14 | opinions on unexpected results, and particularly your |
| 16:47:48 | 15 | comparison of cleavage efficiency of the azidomethyl |
| 16:47:53 | 16 | group as compared to the allyl group. |
| 16:47:55 | 17 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:47:56 | 18 | A. I do. |
| 16:47:57 | 19 | Q. And why did you compare the azidomethyl group |
| 16:48:00 | 20 | to the allyl group, and not any other protecting groups? |
| 16:48:04 | 21 | A. Well, the O-allyl groups were generally |
| 16:48:06 | 22 | believed to be the most promising candidates for |
| 16:48:09 | 23 | protecting groups for the method, so they represented |
| 16:48:11 | 24 | sort of the state of the art and the most rigorous and |
| 16:48:14 | 25 | relevant comparison. |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | nesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|
| 16:48:20 | 1 | Q. Did any of the prior art references that you |
| 16:48:23 | 2 | reviewed discuss the allyl group? |
| 16:48:29 | 3 | A. Yes. They were they were yes, and |
| 16:48:31 | 4 | it also would be they were also relevant because they |
| 16:48:34 | 5 | were discussed by Ju, Tsien, and Metzker. |
| 16:48:38 | 6 | Q. Okay. Can Ju's method be practiced using |
| 16:48:42 | 7 | nucleosides? |
| 16:48:43 | 8 | A. They can be practiced with a nucleoside |
| 16:48:46 | 9 | triphosphate that gets converted into a nucleoside |
| 16:48:50 | 10 | monophosphate. |
| 16:48:51 | 11 | Q. Can Tsien's method be practiced using |
| 16:48:54 | 12 | nucleosides? |
| 16:48:55 | 13 | A. Same answer. |
| 16:49:08 | 14 | Q. Now, counsel asked you whether you were aware |
| 16:49:10 | 15 | of other methods of cleaving an azido group. |
| 16:49:13 | 16 | Do you recall that? |
| 16:49:14 | 17 | A. I do. |
| 16:49:15 | 18 | Q. And are you aware of any methods of cleaving an |
| 16:49:18 | 19 | azido group, other than what's in your declaration? |
| 16:49:21 | 20 | A. Yes. There's a DTT reported method. |
| 16:49:25 | 21 | Q. Did you review any papers discussing DTT as the |
| 16:49:31 | 22 | cleavage reason? |
| 16:49:32 | 23 | A. I did. I reviewed Reardon. |
| 16:49:34 | 24 | Q. Is that the Reardon paper that you identified |
| 16:49:35 | 25 | in your deposition today? |

| 16:49:36 | 1 | A. It is. |
|----------|----|---|
| 16:49:37 | 2 | Q. And what did Reardon show? |
| 16:49:39 | 3 | A. Reardon showed that the deprotection of a 3 |
| 16:49:43 | 4 | azido nucleoside, the deprotection yield efficiency was |
| 16:49:48 | 5 | 80 percent; and that with the monophosphate, the |
| 16:49:52 | 6 | efficiency was worse, it was only 19 percent and, in |
| 16:49:55 | 7 | fact, it was one of only seven or eight it was one of |
| 16:49:58 | 8 | seven or eight different products that were formed, and |
| 16:50:01 | 9 | it was formed at 19 percent, so it was much worse than |
| 16:50:04 | 10 | the nucleoside. |
| 16:50:09 | 11 | Q. Was Reardon the first to look at DTT cleavage |
| 16:50:13 | 12 | of an azido group? |
| 16:50:15 | 13 | MR. SEGAL: Object as outside the scope. |
| 16:50:16 | 14 | I didn't ask him questions about what Reardon |
| 16:50:19 | 15 | discussed. |
| 16:50:20 | 16 | THE WITNESS: No, it wasn't. |
| 16:50:22 | 17 | BY MS. SWAROOP: |
| 16:50:22 | 18 | Q. Are you aware of others? |
| 16:50:26 | 19 | A. Yes. And I'm drawing a blank. |
| 16:50:35 | 20 | Can I |
| 16:50:38 | 21 | Q. Well, let me ask you this: Assuming you're |
| 16:50:41 | 22 | drawing a blank and you can't remember the author, but |
| 16:50:43 | 23 | do you remember anything about any other studies with |
| 16:50:46 | 24 | regard to DTT cleavage? |
| 16:50:49 | 25 | A. Yes, there was a study that looked at the |

| 16:50:51 | 1 | nucleoside that reported quantitative cleavage of the |
|----------|----|---|
| 16:50:54 | 2 | same nucleotide that was examined by Reardon. |
| 16:50:57 | 3 | Q. Okay. And did the Reardon paper analyze that |
| 16:51:02 | 4 | previous study? |
| 16:51:04 | 5 | A. Yes, they did, and they showed it was cleaved |
| 16:51:06 | 6 | at 80 percent efficiency, and they also showed it |
| 16:51:10 | 7 | was so the Reardon study was a much more |
| 16:51:13 | 8 | comprehensive, thorough study. It was published in a |
| 16:51:16 | 9 | much more rigorous journal, and they report extensively |
| 16:51:20 | 10 | the materials and methods, unlike the former paper, |
| 16:51:22 | 11 | which was very which essentially had very little |
| 16:51:25 | 12 | detail. |
| 16:51:25 | 13 | And I think what caught their attention was |
| 16:51:27 | 14 | yields that were too high in the original paper, and I |
| 16:51:30 | 15 | just wish I could remember the name of the original |
| 16:51:33 | 16 | paper. I'm drawing a blank. |
| 16:51:34 | 17 | There's no way I can actually get that |
| 16:51:37 | 18 | information, since it is known in this room? |
| 16:51:40 | 19 | MR. SEGAL: Unfortunately, you can't ask |
| 16:51:42 | 20 | questions, so |
| 16:51:45 | 21 | THE WITNESS: Yeah, it's one of those things |
| 16:51:47 | 22 | where I've got someone else's name in my head and I |
| 16:51:50 | 23 | can't get it out. |
| 16:51:51 | 24 | Anyway, what they reported was, as I said, the |
| 16:51:54 | 25 | 3' azide nucleoside. They reported a quantitative |

| 16:51:58 | 1 | yield, and they reported a very strange statement of |
|----------|----|---|
| 16:52:00 | 2 | 100 percent recovery, which is unlikely because yields |
| 16:52:04 | 3 | are seldom 100 percent. |
| 16:52:07 | 4 | So this is sort of an example where a yield can |
| 16:52:11 | 5 | actually be too high, and it was probably because they |
| 16:52:15 | 6 | were salts or something that they co-purified it with. |
| 16:52:19 | 7 | But, anyway, it obviously motivated Reardon to |
| 16:52:23 | 8 | go look at this reaction a little bit more and, given |
| 16:52:25 | 9 | the data that Reardon publishes, it was clear that what |
| 16:52:28 | 10 | happened in the original report was that they simply |
| 16:52:31 | 11 | didn't have enough sensitivity on their HPLC detector |
| 16:52:36 | 12 | because it was there were multiple peaks in the base |
| 16:52:39 | 13 | line that were just below that just weren't detected |
| 16:52:41 | 14 | in the original paper, and when those peaks were taken |
| 16:52:45 | 15 | into consideration it was only an 80 percent yield. |
| 16:52:56 | 16 | MS. SWAROOP: We're going to mark as |
| 16:52:58 | 17 | Exhibit 2139 the Reardon paper. |
| 16:53:04 | 18 | MR. SEGAL: I'm going to object to that. You |
| 16:53:06 | 19 | can't introduce an exhibit during redirect. |
| 16:53:08 | 20 | I had the same discussion I think you were |
| 16:53:10 | 21 | there, Nate with your partner Bill Zimmerman. So |
| 16:53:13 | 22 | we'll go to the Board on this. This is definitely |
| 16:53:16 | 23 | outside the scope and it's not proper. |
| 16:53:20 | 24 | So I will adjourn the deposition and, like Bill |
| 16:53:25 | 25 | Zimmerman from your firm required us to do, go to the |
| 16:53:29 | 1 | Board, and we'll put it to the Board whether this is | | | |
|----------|----|---|--|--|--|
| 16:53:31 | 2 | proper. | | | |
| 16:53:32 | 3 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, I don't think the Board is | | | |
| 16:53:33 | 4 | open right now, so | | | |
| 16:53:35 | 5 | MR. SEGAL: We'll have to adjourn the | | | |
| 16:53:36 | 6 | deposition. We can come back tomorrow morning. | | | |
| 16:53:40 | 7 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, I think what I'll do is | | | |
| 16:53:43 | 8 | I'll withdraw this from the record and just read the | | | |
| 16:53:45 | 9 | cite in, and if we need to revisit this with the Board, | | | |
| 16:53:49 | 10 | we can. | | | |
| 16:53:49 | 11 | So I want to make my proffer, so the | | | |
| 16:53:52 | 12 | exhibit that I would have shown to the witness is | | | |
| 16:53:54 | 13 | entitled "Reardon, et al.," and it's "Reduction of | | | |
| 16:54:00 | 14 | 3'-azido-3' deoxythymidine (AZT) and AZT Nucleotides by | | | |
| 16:54:09 | 15 | Thiols," Journal of Biological Chemistry, Volume 269, | | | |
| 16:54:15 | 16 | No. 23, issue of June 10th, 1994. | | | |
| 16:54:37 | 17 | And I just want to note for the record that | | | |
| 16:54:39 | 18 | Reardon addresses the Handlon reference, and I'll read | | | |
| 16:54:44 | 19 | that into the record as well. | | | |
| 16:54:46 | 20 | MR. SEGAL: You're testifying now. It's | | | |
| 16:54:48 | 21 | ridiculous. You made your point it refers to the | | | |
| 16:54:51 | 22 | Handlon. | | | |
| 16:54:51 | 23 | MS. SWAROOP: But the witness referred to it, | | | |
| 16:54:52 | 24 | so I just want to make a record. | | | |
| 16:54:54 | 25 | MR. SEGAL: This is completely improper. | | | |

| 16:54:56 | 1 | MS. SWAROOP: He testified that he reviewed it, | | | |
|----------|----|--|--|--|--|
| 16:54:58 | 2 | so I want to make that a record. | | | |
| 16:55:01 | 3 | Handlon and Oppenheimer, 1998, Pharmaceutical | | | |
| 16:55:04 | 4 | Research, Volume V, pages 297 through 299. | | | |
| 16:55:29 | 5 | Without marking it, I'm just going to show | | | |
| 16:55:32 | 6 | Exhibit 1239 to the witness. Again | | | |
| 16:55:36 | 7 | MR. SEGAL: It's totally improper. | | | |
| 16:55:38 | 8 | MS. SWAROOP: I'm just asking if it refreshes | | | |
| 16:55:40 | 9 | his recollection as to what he's what he was talking | | | |
| 16:55:42 | 10 | about, his testimony. | | | |
| 16:55:44 | 11 | MR. SEGAL: This is completely improper. Now, | | | |
| 16:55:45 | 12 | I'll go to the Board on this. This is ridiculous. He | | | |
| 16:55:48 | 13 | didn't cite to these references in his declaration. He | | | |
| 16:55:52 | 14 | can't introduce new testimony during redirect. | | | |
| 16:55:54 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: During your cross, he did testify | | | |
| 16:55:56 | 16 | that he reviewed these references, and he was talking | | | |
| 16:56:00 | 17 | about a Reardon reference and I just want to | | | |
| 16:56:01 | 18 | MR. SEGAL: The same issue same exact issue | | | |
| 16:56:02 | 19 | came up, and Marcus and I don't know if Marcus was | | | |
| 16:56:04 | 20 | there, but Nate was definitely there and our witness | | | |
| 16:56:08 | 21 | testified about Zavgorodny during the cross examination, | | | |
| 16:56:11 | 22 | and we tried to ask him some questions about Zavgorodny, | | | |
| 16:56:15 | 23 | and Bill Zimmerman objected and made us go to the Board. | | | |
| 16:56:19 | 24 | So, I mean, as long as we're playing on the | | | |
| 16:56:21 | 25 | same playing field, we'll do the same thing. Come back | | | |

| 16:56:25 | 1 | tomorrow morning if it's necessary, and we'll call the | | | |
|----------|----|--|--|--|--|
| 16:56:27 | 2 | board. | | | |
| 16:56:28 | 3 | BY MS. SWAROOP: | | | |
| 16:56:28 | 4 | Q. Dr. Romesberg, is the Reardon paper that you | | | |
| 16:56:30 | 5 | testified during cross, the same Reardon that we've been | | | |
| 16:56:33 | 6 | discussing in this series of questioning? | | | |
| 16:56:38 | 7 | A. The Reardon paper that I mentioned in I | | | |
| 16:56:41 | 8 | guess this is called cross | | | |
| 16:56:43 | 9 | Q. In the morning session. | | | |
| 16:56:44 | 10 | A in the morning session is the same Reardon | | | |
| 16:56:47 | 11 | paper that I just described; and I also cited I hope | | | |
| 16:56:50 | 12 | I can mention this now the other paper was Handlon. | | | |
| 16:56:53 | 13 | I've now remembered. I don't know why I was Handlon | | | |
| 16:56:57 | 14 | was the original report that Reardon corrected. | | | |
| 16:57:00 | 15 | MR. SEGAL: And again, objection. It's outside | | | |
| 16:57:02 | 16 | the scope. He didn't testify at all with regard to the | | | |
| 16:57:04 | 17 | substance of the Reardon or the Handlon papers during | | | |
| 16:57:08 | 18 | cross examination. | | | |
| 16:57:08 | 19 | MS. SWAROOP: Well, he was asked whether he was | | | |
| 16:57:09 | 20 | aware of other methods of cleaving an azido group, so | | | |
| 16:57:12 | 21 | it's directly related to that portion of the cross. | | | |
| 16:57:24 | 22 | And also, since we have stated our if you | | | |
| 16:57:26 | 23 | need to add more, you can, but now I've made my proffer | | | |
| 16:57:29 | 24 | and you've stated your objection on the record, so I | | | |
| 16:57:32 | 25 | don't think there's a need to go to the Board on this. | | | |

| Deposition of Floyd Romesberg, Ph.D. | | omesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|--------------------------------------|----|--|
| 16:57:34 | 1 | So if there is further record you want to make, |
| 16:57:38 | 2 | please go ahead and do so. |
| 16:58:01 | 3 | MR. SEGAL: I think the record's clear. |
| 16:58:04 | 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Okay. Well, I have no further |
| 16:58:06 | 5 | questions. |
| 16:58:08 | 6 | MR. SEGAL: If we can take a few minutes to |
| 16:58:11 | 7 | determine whether we have any recross questions. |
| 16:58:13 | 8 | MS. SWAROOP: Sure. |
| 16:58:14 | 9 | MR. SEGAL: Thank you. |
| 16:58:15 | 10 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are going off the |
| 16:58:16 | 11 | record. The time is 4:58. |
| 16:58:18 | 12 | (Recess from 4:58 p.m. to 5:20 p.m.) |
| 17:20:53 | 13 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: We are back on the record. |
| 17:20:54 | 14 | The time is 5:20. |
| 17:20:56 | 15 | MS. SWAROOP: Counsel, before you get started, |
| 17:20:58 | 16 | I just want to note that you did mark during cross |
| 17:21:01 | 17 | Exhibit 1020. |
| 17:21:02 | 18 | I just want and asked no questions of the |
| 17:21:05 | 19 | witness with regard to that exhibit. I just want to |
| 17:21:07 | 20 | object on the grounds of relevance and also object as |
| 17:21:10 | 21 | improper supplemental evidence and untimely under |
| 17:21:14 | 22 | Rule 42.123. |
| 17:21:19 | 23 | MR. SEGAL: We obviously don't agree with that |
| 17:21:21 | 24 | objection. |
| 17:21:23 | 25 | Dr. Romesberg, thank you for your time. I have |

| Deposition of Floyd R | Dimesberg, Ph.D. INTELLIGENT BIO-SYSTEMS, INC. vs. ILLUMINA CAMBRIDGE, LTD. |
|-----------------------|---|
| 17:21:27 1 | no further questions. |
| 17:21:29 2 | I think we're adjourned. |
| 17:21:32 3 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Okay to go off the record? |
| 17:21:34 4 | MS. SWAROOP: Yes. |
| 17:21:35 5 | THE VIDEO OPERATOR: Off the record. The time |
| 17:21:36 6 | is 5:21. |
| 7 | (The Video Deposition concluded at 5:21 p.m.) |
| 8 | * * * |
| 9 | |
| 10 | |
| 11 | |
| 12 | |
| 13 | |
| 14 | |
| 15 | |
| 16 | |
| 17 | FLOYD ROMESBERG, Ph.D. |
| 18 | |
| 19 | |
| 20 | |
| 21 | |
| 22 | |
| 23 | |
| 24 | |
| 25 | |

| 1 | I, Lynn Penfield, a Certified Shorthand Reporter |
|----|--|
| 2 | No. 8589, State of California, RPR, do hereby |
| 3 | certify: |
| 4 | That the deponent in the foregoing deposition, |
| 5 | FLOYD ROMESBERG, Ph.D., |
| 6 | was by me first duly sworn and the foregoing testimony |
| 7 | was reported by me and was thereafter transcribed with |
| 8 | Computer-Aided Transcription; that the foregoing 190 |
| 9 | pages is a full, complete and true record of said |
| 10 | proceeding. |
| 11 | I further certify that I am not of counsel or |
| 12 | attorney for either or any of the parties in the |
| 13 | foregoing proceeding and caption names or in any way |
| 14 | interested in the outcome of the cause in said caption |
| 15 | The dismantling, unsealing, or unbinding of the |
| 16 | original transcript will render the reporter's |
| 17 | certificate null and void. |
| 18 | IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this 9th |
| 19 | day of July, 2014. |
| 20 | Reading and Signing was requested. |
| 21 | Reading and Signing was waived. |
| 22 | X Reading and Signing was not requested. |
| 23 | |
| 24 | |
| 25 | Lynn Penfield, CSR No. 8589, RPR, CRR |

KRAMM COURT REPORTING

Errata Sheet

Re: Deposition of Floyd Romesberg

Date: 7-08-2014

Caption: Intelligent Bio-Systems, Inc. v. Illumina Cambridge Ltd - IPR2013-00517

| Page | Line | Correction/Change | Reason |
|------|------|--|----------|
| 17 | 19 | "ones are here" -> "ones here" | error |
| 25 | 17 | "The nucleobase part" -> "The nucleobase and sugar past" | accuracy |
| 5 | 3 | "it to a nucleus" -> "to it" | accuracy |
| 28 | 16 | "nucleic base" -> "nucleobase" | error |
| 28 | 18 | "nucleic base" -> "nucleobare" | e avor |
| 33 | 25 | "MR. BURCH" -> "MS. SWAROOP" | ervor |
| 45 | 9 | "3' hydroxyl or the hydroxyl" > "3' hydroxyl" | e.wor |
| 45 | 2(| "atom" -> "atoms" | ACCUVACY |
| 50 | 12 | "Reverse" -> "Reverse Transcriptase" | emor |
| 50 | 14 | "Reverse" -> "Reverse Transcriptase" | e Mar |
| 50 | 16 | "is due" -> "is to" | error |
| 53 | 6 | "stuff" -> "step" | error |
| 58 | ١ | "sections" -> "a section" | erver |
| 61 | 5 | "injected to" -> "injected into" | emor |
| 61 | 18 | "raised to" -> "raised" | e mor |
| 64 | 14 | "of all polymerases -> for all polymerases | & Wer |
| 67 | [| "ion on" -> "ion in" | EVYDY |
| 69 | 1 | "cleaved" -> "cleavage" | |

July 23,2014) Date

Signature

Errata Sheet

Re: Deposition of Floyd Romesberg

Date: 7-08-2014

Caption: Intelligent Bio-Systems, Inc. v. Illumina Cambridge Ltd - IPR2013-00517

| Page | Line | Correction/Change | Reason |
|------|------|--|----------|
| 70 | 8 | "in a MOM" -> "or a MOM" | e.wov |
| 71 | 8 | "it like a MOM" -> "its not like a MOM" | Error |
| 71 | 8 | "A MOM group is only" - "A MOM group has only" | & YMDV |
| 72 | 22 | "physical chemical"-> "physicochemical" | e wor |
| 84 | 16 | "of better" -> "to be better" | emor |
| 84 | 19 | "reaction" -> "reactions" | ewer |
| 95 | 20 | "take" -> "react" | accuracy |
| 103 | 1] | "attach" -> "attached" | accuracy |
| 105 | 10 | "diaza" -> "deaza" | error |
| 106 | 4 | "diazas" -> "deazas" | ennor |
| 116 | 8 | " Phospho ylide" -> "phosphoylide" | accoracy |
| 118 | 6 | "Use an" -> "Use in" | error |
| 125 | 6 | "everything up on" -> "everything upon" | error |
| 129 | 23 | "constant" -> "constants of" | accuracy |
| 129 | 24 | "proportionalities" -> "proportionality" | accuracy |
| 131 | 18 | "constant" -> "constant of" | Accuracy |
| 144 | 24 | delete "up here" | accuracy |
| 145 | 23 | "21 hybrids" -> "21 base pairs" | accuracy |
| | | Fto | / |

July 23, 2014 Date

Signature

Errata Sheet

1

Re: Deposition of Floyd Romesberg V Date: 7-08-2014

Caption: Intelligent Bio-Systems, Inc. v. Illumina Cambridge Ltd - IPR2013-00517

| Page | Line | Correction/Change | Reason |
|------|------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 145 | 24" | "to pyridine" -> "against pyridine" | EVYDY |
| 146 | 8 | "edition" -> "addition" | error |
| 147 | 12 | "quil" -> "Kit" | envor |
| 149 | 15 | "a little" -> "few" | accover- |
| 149 | 16 | "example" -> "examples" | accuracy |
| 152 | 2 | "melthown" -> "melting" | ernor |
| 152 | 1,6 | "reduce" -> "induce" | emor |
| 162 | チ | "come through" -> "comb through" | ewar |
| 165 | 15 | "Went was" -> "Went with was" | e wor |
| 165 | 25 | "is ligating" -> "is ligated" | accurated |
| 175 | 18 | "phosphine in" -> "in" | ewor |
| 176 | 13 | "phosphine in" -> "in" | ennor |
| 177 | 23 | "plasma" -> "plasmid" | enror |
| 178 | 16 | "pyridines have" -> "pyridine has" | e war |
| 178 | 25 | "With stand" -> "Withstand" | e way |
| 185 | 1/ | "on their HPLL" -> " in their HPLC" | evinit |
| | | | |
| | | | |

July 23,2014 Date

Signature



KRAMM COURT REPORTING

Page: 190